An Introduction to TEI simplePrint

Lou Burnard *Martin Mueller* *Sebastian Rahtz* *James Cummings* *Magdalena Turska*

January 2017

Preface

This document is the formal specification for TEI simplePrint, an entry-level customization of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines, intended to be generally useful to a large variety of encoders attempting to cope with the standardized representation of a variety of documents in digital form.

Like every other TEI customization, TEI simplePrint was designed for use with a particular type of material. If the material you are planning to encode matches the following criteria, then TEI simplePrint is for you. If it does not, it may not be.

- You are encoding print material, rather than manuscript: simplePrint provides no way of encoding manuscript features such as correction, deletion, or scribal variation
- You are encoding material from the Early Modern period (i.e., up to the end of the nineteenth century): some of the features for which simplePrint provides encodings are rarely found in modern materials.
- You are encoding material written, broadly speaking, within the Western European tradition, using largely Western European characters. simplePrint does provide facilities for encoding short passages in non Western European languages, but many features needed to cope with Asian or ancient scripts are missing.
- Your intention is to provide a relatively simple encoding for a large amount of material, rather than a rich encoding of a small amount of material: simplePrint is intended to help libraries and archives wishing to go beyond basic digital facsimiles, rather than to support specialist research. It does not, for example, include features for detailed linguistic tagging beyond simple word-level tagging, nor for specialised text types such as dictionaries, historical or biographical databases, etc.

If your needs go beyond those summarized here, simplePrint may still be a good point of departure, and may be very useful as a basis for the creation of your own TEI customisation. We don't however discuss the creation of a TEI customization in this document: the TEI website provides a number of links to tutorial material and tools which may assist in this process.

The present document is intended to be generally comprehensible and accessible, but does assume some knowledge of XML (the encoding language used by the TEI), and of the way it is used by the TEI. Further information on both these topics are available from many places, not least the TEI's own web site at `http://www.tei-c.org`.

The TEI simplePrint schema was first elaborated as a part of the TEI Simple project funded by the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation (2012-2014). The project sought to define a new highly-constrained and prescriptive subset of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines suited to the representation of early modern print materials, a formally-defined set of processing rules which permit modern web applications to easily present and analyze the encoded texts, mapping to other ontologies, and processes to describe the encoding status and richness of a TEI digital text. Its choice of elements reflected the practices followed in the encoding of large-scale literary archives, notably those produced by the Text Creation Partnership. Practice of other comparable archives such as the German Text Archive was also taken into account.

The most distinctive feature of TEI simplePrint is its use of the TEI Processing Model, which provides explicit and recommended options for the display or processing of every textual element. Programmers developing systems to handle texts encoded with TEI simplePrint do not have to look beyond this when building stylesheets or other components. This greatly reduces the complexity of developing applications that will work reliably and consistently for many users and across large corpora of documents.

The TEI simplePrint schema and the TEI Processing Model were first defined by a working group led by Martin Mueller (Northwestern University) and Sebastian Rahtz (Oxford

University). Major contributions to the project were made by Magdalena Turska (Oxford University), James Cummings (Oxford University), and Brian Pytlik Zillig. The changes to the TEI scheme needed to support the TEI Processing Model were reviewed and approved by the TEI Technical Council for inclusion in release 3.0.0 of TEI P5 in February 2016. The present document was extensively revised and extended by Lou Burnard in July 2016 for submission to the TEI Technical Council.

1 A Short Example

We begin with a short example. How should we go about transferring into a computer a passage of prose, such as the start of the last chapter of Charlotte Brontë's novel *Jane Eyre*? We might start by simply copying what we see on the printed page, typing it in such a way that what appears on the screen looks as similar as possible, for example, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings, page breaks, and paragraphs, and so forth. Of course, the possibilities are limited by the nature of the computer program we use to capture the text: it may not be possible for example to reflect accurately the typographic characteristics of our source with all such software. Some characters in the printed text (such as the accented letter *a* in *faàl* or the long dash) may not be available on the keyboard; some typographic distinctions (such as that between small capitals and full capitals) may not be readily accessible. Our first attempt tries to mimic the appearance of the former, and simply ignores the latter.

```
  CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the par-
son and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I
went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking
the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --
'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The
housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic
order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a
remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having
one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned
by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did
stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens
roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air,
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the
polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --
'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'
A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master,
but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she
basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to
ear.
'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Ed-
ward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he
was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian
name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he
would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I
wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.
'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary
this.'
I put into his hand a five-pound note.  Without waiting to hear
more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time
after, I caught the words --
'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And
again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry
good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see
that.'
I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what
I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and

474

JANE EYRE                       475

Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she
```

```
would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see me.
'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I
read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-
moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your
grave or mine.'
How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered
the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote
to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or allud-
ing to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious,
kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-
ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.
```

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to distinguish them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to be certain exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text's hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find words broken across a line;
- the accented letter in *faàl* and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions (*faa\l*) which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to display the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded in TEI simplePrint. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions in a standardized way:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly by means of tags rather than implicitly by white space.
- Apostrophes are retained, but the quotation marks indicating direct speech have been removed, and direct speech is now marked explicitly by means of a tag.
- The accented letter and the long dash are accurately represented, using the appropriate Unicode character.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty <pb> tag; the page heading and running text have been suppressed.
- The lineation of the original has also been suppressed and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

```
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
 <p>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk,
were
    alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the
    manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives,
and I
    said —</p>
 <p>
  <q>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</q> The housekeeper
and
    her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at
any
    time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger
of
    having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by
a
    torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the
ladle
    with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some
    three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's
knives
    also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the
roast,
    said only —</p>
 <p>
  <q>Have you, miss? Well, for sure!</q>
 </p>
 <p>A short time after she pursued, <q>I seed you go out with the master, but I
didn't
      know you were gone to church to be wed</q>; and she basted away. John, when I
    turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear. <q>I telled Mary how it would
be,</q>
    he said: <q>I knew what Mr Edward</q> (John was an old servant, and had known
his
    master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his
Christian
    name) — <q>I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait
long
      either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!</q> and
he
    politely pulled his forelock.</p>
 <p>
  <q>Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.</q>
 </p>
 <p>I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the
    kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words
    —</p>
 <p>
  <q>She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.</q> And again,
<q>If
      she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and
i'
      his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.</q>
 </p>
 <p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done:
fully
    explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb n="475"/> Mary approved the
step
    unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the
    honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>
```

```
 <p>
  <q>She had better not wait till then, Jane,</q> said Mr Rochester, when I read
her
   letter to him; <q>if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will
shine
     our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.</q>
 </p>
 <p>How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in
which I
   communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however,
mentioning
   Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and
though
   very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent
   correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
   live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.</p>
</div>
```

This encoding is expressed in TEI XML, a very widely used and standardized method of representing information about a document within the document itself. The transcribed words are complemented by special flags within angle brackets, called *tags*, which both characterise and mark the beginning and end of a string of characters. For example, each paragraph is marked by a tag at its start, and a corresponding at its end. We don't elaborate further on the syntax of TEI XML here. [1]

Aside from its syntax, it is important to note that this particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. We have chosen to prioritize and simplify the representation of the words of the text over the representation of the typographic layout associated with them in this source document. This makes it easier for a computer to answer questions about the words in the document than about its typesetting, reflecting our research priorities. This priority also leads us to suppress end-of-line hyphenation. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word honeymoon to appear as honey-moon on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë's text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. Similarly, our decision makes it impossible to use this transcription as a means of statistically analysing hyphenation practice. An encoding makes explicit all and only those textual features of importance to the encoder.

It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended to address other research priorities. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- names could be classified as personal, geographical, or institutional
- detailed bibliographic information about the text's provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;

[1] Many introductory tutorials on XML are available on the web, for example at `http://www.w3schools.com/xml/`. The way the TEI uses XML is fully documented in section v of the TEI Guidelines; a very basic introduction to TEI XML is also available at `http://www.ultraslavonic.info/intro-to-xml`. The formal specification of the XML language is at `http://www.w3.org/TR/xml`.

- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

In the remainder of this document, we present a number of TEI-recommended ways of supporting these and other encoding requirements. These ways generally involve the application of specific TEI XML elements, selected from the full range of possibilities documented in the TEI *Guidelines*. Like every other TEI project, TEI Simple proposes a view of the TEI Guidelines. This document defines and documents that view.

2 The Structure of a TEI simplePrint Document

A TEI-conformant text contains (a) a *TEI header* (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) one or more representations of a text. These representations may be of three kinds: a transcribed text, marked up as a <text> element; a collection of digital images representing the text, marked up using a <facsimile> element; or a literal transcription of one or more documents instantiating the text, marked up using the `<sourceDoc>` element.

These elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element, which must be declared within the TEI *namespace*, and therefore usually takes the form <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> [2].

Some aspects of the TEI header are described in more detail in section *15. The Electronic Title Page*. In what follows, we will focus chiefly on the use of the <text> element, though we describe one way of using the <facsimile> element in combination with it or alone in section *14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile*. We do not consider the `<sourceDoc>` element further, since it is mainly used in very specialised applications for which TEI simplePrint would not be appropriate.

A text may be *unitary* (a single work) or *composite* (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have optional *front* or *back* matter such as title pages, prefaces, appendixes etc. We use the term *body* for whatever comes between these in the source document. We discuss various kinds of composite text in section *12. Composite and Floating Texts* below.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <front>
<!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
  </front>
  <body>
<!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
  </body>
  <back>
<!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
  </back>
 </text>
</TEI>
```

[2] A *namespace* is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for TEI elements is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0

In each of the following sections we include a short list of the TEI *elements* under discussion, along with a brief description, and in most cases an example of how they are used. Throughout the text, element names are linked to their detailed reference documentation, as given in the TEI Guidelines. Note that most of the examples provided by the reference documentation, and all of the links, are not specific to TEI simplePrint.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element.

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.

<text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

3 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a unitary text is encoded by means of a <text> element, which may contain the following elements:

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section *13. Front and Back Matter*. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text. A text must always have a body.

3.1 Text Division Elements and Global Attributes

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs or similar blocks of text, or these may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. The element is used to represent any such grouping of blocks.

 (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

@*type [att.typed]* characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

The *type* attribute on the element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division in order to distinguish them. Typical values might be book, chapter, section, part, poem, song, etc. TEI simplePrint does not constrain the range of values that may be used here.

A element may itself contain further, nested, s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

Here as elsewhere the *xml:id* attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section *3.7. Cross References and Links*. It is good practice to provide

an *xml:id* attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below.

The *n* attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the *n* attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by the *xml:id* attribute, it does not need to be unique.

The *xml:lang* attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section *3.5.3. Foreign Words or Expressions* below.

The *rendition* attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section *3.5. Marking Highlighted Phrases* below. Note that this attribute is used to describe the appearance of the *source* text, rather than the appearance of any intended output when the encoded text is displayed. The two may of course be similar, or identical, but the TEI does not assume or require this.

These four attributes, *xml:id*, *n*, *xml:lang*, and *rendition* are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are called *global attributes*. Other attributes defined in the TEI simplePrint schema are discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking*.

As noted above, the value of every *xml:id* attribute must be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring this is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith's *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define *xml:id* values for this structure as follows:

```
<body>
 <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
  <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
<!-- ... -->
  <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10"
   type="chapter">
   <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1"
    type="part">
<!-- ... -->
   </div>
   <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2"
    type="part">
<!-- ... -->
   </div>
  </div>
<!-- ... -->
 </div>
 <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
<!-- ... -->
 </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for *xml:id* and *n* attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are

numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```
<body>
 <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
  <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS012" n="2" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
 </div>
 <div xml:id="TS02" n="2" type="volume">
  <div xml:id="TS021" n="3" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS022" n="4" type="chapter">
<!-- ... -->
  </div>
 </div>
</body>
```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the *xml:id* values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

3.2 Headings and Closings

Every may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as End of Chapter 1 at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be found at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section *13.1.2. Prefatory Matter*.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example Chapter 1) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g.), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy's *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="part">
 <div xml:id="UGT101" n="1" type="chapter">
  <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
  <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ... </p>
 </div>
</div>
```

3.3 Textual Components

In prose texts such as the Brontë example above, the divisions are generally composed of paragraphs, represented as <p> elements, though in some circumstances it may be preferred to use the anonymous block element <ab>. In poetic or dramatic texts different elements are used, representing stanzas and verse lines in the first case, and individual speeches or stage directions in the second:

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any component-level unit of text, acting as a container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the same constraints as, a paragraph.

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

We discuss each of these kinds of component separately below.

3.3.1 Verse

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```
<lg n="I">
 <l>I Sing the progresse of a deathlesse soule,</l>
 <l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
<!-- ... -->
 <l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
 <l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>
```

Note that the <l> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: as elsewhere the original lineation of the source text is not therefore preserved by this encoding. The <lb> element described in section *3.4. Page and Line Numbers* might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

In a poetic text it may also be considered useful to identify the rhymes, for which the following element may be used:

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line.

@*label* provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

The following example shows how this element might be used both to identify rhyming words or word parts and to assign each rhyme to a part of a rhyming pattern by means of its *label* attribute. The rhyming pattern here is specified by the *rhyme* attribute supplied on the <lg> representing the stanza within which the pattern operates:

```
<lg rhyme="AABCCBBA">
 <l>The sunlight on the <rhyme label="A">garden</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>
  <rhyme label="A">Harden</rhyme>s and grows <rhyme label="B">cold</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>We cannot cage the <rhyme label="C">minute</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>Wi<rhyme label="C">thin it</rhyme>s nets of <rhyme label="B">gold</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>When all is <rhyme label="B">told</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>We cannot beg for <rhyme label="A">pardon</rhyme>.</l>
</lg>
```

The *rhyme* attribute may be used independently of the <rhyme> element, or in combination with it, as above.

3.3.2 Drama

A dramatic text contains speeches, which may be in prose or verse, and will also contain stage directions. The <sp> element is used to represent each identified speech. It contains an optional speaker indication, marked with the <speaker> element, which can be followed by one or more <l> or <p> elements, depending on whether the speech is considered to be in prose or in verse. Stage directions, whether within or between speeches, are marked using the <stage> element.

For example:

```
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
 <p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>Pull <hi>on</hi> your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>
  <stage>(realizing his trousers are down)</stage>. True</p>
</sp>
<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
<sp>
 <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
 <p>Well? Shall we go?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
 <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<stage>They do not move.</stage>
```

In a verse drama, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the *part* attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete:

```
<div type="Act" n="I">
 <head>ACT I</head>
 <div type="Scene" n="1">
  <head>SCENE I</head>
  <stage rendition="#italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at
     several doors</stage>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
   <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
```

```
    <speaker>Barn</speaker>
    <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
   </sp>
   <sp>
    <speaker>Fran</speaker>
    <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
   </sp>
   <sp>
    <speaker>Barn</speaker>
    <l part="F">He.</l>
   </sp>
   <sp>
    <speaker>Fran</speaker>
    <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
   </sp>
<!-- ... -->
 </div>
</div>
```

The value of the *part* attribute may indicate just that the element bearing is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect rather than a complete verse line (`part="Y"`); alternatively it may indicate whether this is an initial (I), medial (M) or F (final) fragment.

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```
<div>
 <sp>
  <speaker>First voice</speaker>
  <lg type="stanza" part="I">
   <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
   <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
  </lg>
 </sp>
 <sp>
  <speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
  <lg type="stanza" part="F">
   <l>The air is cut away before.</l>
   <l>And closes from behind.</l>
  </lg>
 </sp>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

The <sp> element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the *who* attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```
<div>
 <sp who="#OPI">
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
 </sp>
 <sp who="#GRM">
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
 </sp>
 <sp who="#OPI">
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
```

```
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first
     place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the
     present I will forbear.</p>
 </sp>
</div>
```

Here the *who* attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to items in a list of the characters in the novel. In the case of a play, this list of characters might appear in the original source as a cast list or dramatic personae, which might be marked up using the <castList> element described in section *13.2.2. Specialized Front and Back Matter* below. Such a list would not, of course, be appropriate to provide descriptive information about each character, much of which does not appear in the original source. Instead a <particDesc> (participant description) element should be provided in the TEI header, as further discussed in section *15.3. The Profile Description* below.

3.3.3 Other Kinds of Text Block

As mentioned above, the <ab> element may also be used in preference to the <p> element. It should be used for blocks of text which are not clearly paragraphs, verse lines, or dramatic speeches. Typical examples include the canonical verses of the Bible, and the textual blocks of other ancient documents which predate the invention of the paragraph, such as Greek inscriptions or Egyptian hieroglyphs. The element is also useful as a means of encoding more specialized kinds of textual block, such as the question and answer structure of a catechism, or the highly formalized substructure of a legal document (if is not considered appropriate for these). In more modern documents, it can be used to encode semi-organized or fragmentary materials such as an artist's notebook or work in progress; or to faithfully capture the substructure of a file produced by an OCR system.

3.4 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements:

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.

<lb> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a topographic line in some edition or version of a text.

<cb> (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page.

<milestone> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page.

The <pb>, <lb>, and <cb> elements are special cases of a general class of elements known as *milestone*s because they mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, a change of author or style, or in general any significant change in the text not enclosed by an XML element. Unlike other elements, milestone elements do not enclose a piece of text and make an assertion about it; instead they indicate a point in the text where something changes, as indicated by a change in the values of the milestone's attributes *unit*, which indicates the something concerned, and *n* which indicates the new value.

The <pb>, <lb>, and <cb> elements are shortcuts or *syntactic sugar* for <milestone unit="page"/> <milestone unit="line"/> and <milestone unit="column"/> respectively.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, whether to simplify later proof-reading, or to align the transcribed text with a set of page images, as further discussed below.

Because <pb> and other milestone elements are empty, they may be placed freely within or between other elements. However, it is recommended practice always to put them at the *beginning* of whatever unit it is that their presence implies, and not to nest them within elements contained by that unit. For example, in the following example a page break occurs between two lines of a poem:

```
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<pb n="13"/>
<l>Its fleece was white as snow</l>
```

The <pb> element should be placed ahead of all the text encoded on the 13th page. Contrast this with the following less accurate encoding:

```
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<l>
 <pb n="13"/>Its fleece was white as snow
</l>
```

This is less accurate because it implies that the second verse line actually begins before the page break.

Similar considerations apply to line breaks (<lb>), though these are less frequently considered useful when encoding modern printed textual sources. When transcribing manuscripts or early printed books, however, it is often helpful to retain them in an encoding, if only to facilitate alignment of transcription and original. Like <pb>, the <lb> element should appear *before* the text of the line whose start it signals.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, the edition in question may be specified by the *ed* attribute. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2):

```
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done:
fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475"/> Mary
approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would
<pb ed="ED2" n="485"/>just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see
me.</p>
```

When transcribing from a paginated source, the encoder must decide whether to suppress such features as running titles, page signatures, catch words etc., to replace them by a simplified representation using the <pb> element, perhaps using the *n* attribute to preserve some of the information, or to preserve them entirely using the <fw> element. The latter strategy is appropriate in encodings which aim to retain as much information as possible about the original typography; it will however make more complex the processing of the source for other purposes, as in the following example:

```
<l>He also fix'd the wandering
QUEEN OF NIGHT,</l>
<fw type="sig">Ii 2</fw>
<fw type="catch">Whether</fw>
<pb n="244"/>
<l>Whether she wanes into a scanty orb</l>...
<!-- Thomson, Seasons, 1730-->
```

The <pb> element is also used to align parts of a transcription with a digital image of the page concerned. This may be done in a very simple but inflexible way by using the *facs* attribute to point to each page image concerned:

```
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge
immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted.
Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475" facs="ed1p475.png"/> Mary approved the step
unreservedly... </p>
```

The *facs* attribute can supply (as here) a filename, or any other form of URI, if for example the page image is stored remotely. One drawback of this simplistic approach is that there must be exactly one image file per page of text. It is not therefore suitable in the case where the available page images represent double page spreads, or where there are multiple images of the same page (for example at different resolutions).

A more powerful approach, discussed in section *14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile* below, is to use the <facsimile> element to define the organisation of the set of images representing the text, and then use the *facs* attribute to point to individual components of that representation.

3.5 Marking Highlighted Phrases

3.5.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader's attention to some associated change.

The global *rendition* attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged <head rendition="simple:bold">, and one in italic <head rendition="simple:italic">.

The values used for the *rendition* attribute point to definitions provided for the formatting concerned. These definitions are typically provided by a <rendition> element in the document's header, as further discussed in section *15.2.3. Tagging Declaration*.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element <hi> may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```
<p>
 <hi rendition="simple:blackletter">And
   this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rendition="simple:italic">Walter
Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the
said intended marriage ...
</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations, titles, and foreign words) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the element <q> (as discussed in the following section) should be used. Again, the global *rendition* attribute can be used to record details of the highlighting used in the source if this is thought useful.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence: On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d'antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach. Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might be encoded as follows:

```
<p>On the one hand the
<title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated with the new rise of romance of
twelfth-century France, the <foreign>romans d'antiquité</foreign>, the romances of
Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might be encoded like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <hi rendition="simple:italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is
associated with the new rise of
romance of twelfth-century France, the <hi rendition="simple:italic">romans
   d'antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

3.5.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation, though many other features are possible. The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements such as `<mentioned>` or `<said>` to distinguish some of these features, but these more specialised elements are not included in TEI simplePrint. In TEI Simple however, we use the <quote> element for quotation only, and the <q> element for all other material found within quotation marks in the text.

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to
forget Dr. Johnson's description of the lexicographer as <quote>a harmless
   drudge.</quote>
</p>
```

As elsewhere, the way that a citation or quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), may be represented using the *rendition* attribute. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the <q> element and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```
<p>
 <q>Who-e debel
   you?</q> — he at last said — <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so
saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes *next* and *prev* may be used, as described in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking*.

Direct speech may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the *who* attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

```
<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came down into the office just this day eight weeks
with this very
paper in his hand, and he says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr.
   Wilson, that I was a red-headed man.</q>
</q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the *rendition* attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

3.5.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words, phrases, or longer stretches of text that are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. The global *xml:lang* attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the *xml:lang* attribute. For example:

```
<p>John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>.</p>
<p>Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die Dreigroschenoper</title>?</p>
```

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, or applies.

The value of the *xml:lang* attribute on an element applies hierarchically to everything contained by that element, unless overridden:

```
<div xml:lang="la">
 <p>Pars haec Latine composita est.</p>
 <p xml:lang="en">Except that this sentence is in English.</p>
 <p>Vita brevis, ars longa.</p>
</div>
```

Here we specify that the whole element uses the language with the coded identifier la i.e., Latin. Since it is contained by that there is no need to supply this information again for the first <s> element. The second <s> element however overrides this value, and indicates that its content is in English (the language with identifier en). The third <s> element is again in Latin.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the *xml:lang* attribute, are defined by an international standard[3], as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

zh	Chinese	grc	Ancient Greek
en	English	el	Greek
enm	Middle English	ja	Japanese
fr	French	la	Latin
de	German	sa	Sanskrit

3.6 Notes

A note is any additional comment found in a text, marked in some way as being out of the main textual stream. A note is always attached to some part of the text, implicitly or explicitly: we call this its target, or its *point of attachment*. The element <note> should be used to mark any kind of note whether it appears as a separate block of text in the main text area, at the foot of the page, at the end of the chapter or volume, in the margin, or in some other place.

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation.

Notes may be in a different hand or typeface, may be authorial or editorial, and may have been added later. The attributes *type* and *resp* can be used to distinguish between different kinds of notes or identify their authors.

In a printed or written text, the point of attachment for a note is typically represented by a siglum such as an alphanumerical or other character, often in superscripted form. When encoding such a text, it is conventional to replace this siglum by a note element containing the annotation itself, as in the following example:

```
<p>...some text <note xml:id="n6">a note about some text</note> .... </p>
```

An alternative approach is to encode the point of attachment wherever it appears in the text, using for example the <ref> element discussed in the next section, and to place the <note> element anywhere convenient. The two can then be associated by using the *target* attribute on the <ref> element to point to the <note> element, as in the following example, in which the superscripted 7 indicating the point of attachment has been retained as part of the encoding:

```
<p>...some text <ref target="#n7"
  rendition="simple:superscript">7</ref> .... <note xml:id="n7">a note about some
text</note>
</p>
```

It may however be problematic to determine the precise position of the point of attachment, particularly in the case of marginal notes. A marginal note may also be hard to distinguish from a label or subheading which introduces the text with which it is associated. Where the purpose of the note is clearly to label the associated text, rather than to comment on it, the element <label> may be preferable. Where it is clearly a subheading attached to a distinct subdivision, it may be preferable to start a new element and encode the subheading as a <head>.

[3]The relevant Internet standard is *Best Current Practice 47* (http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.

Note however that a <head> cannot be inserted anywhere except at the beginning of a . And where (as in some Early Modern English plays) marginal annotation is systematically used to identify speakers, it may be better to represent these using the <speaker> element introduced above. In cases of doubt, the encoder should decide on a clear policy and preferably document it for the use of others.

3.7 Cross References and Links

Any kind of cross reference or link found at one point in a text which points to another part of the same or another document may be encoded using the <ref> element discussed in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.*

3.7.1 Simple Cross References

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

Usually, the presence of a cross-reference or link will be indicated by some text or symbol in the source being encoded, which will then become the content of the <ref> element. Occasionally, however, and frequently in the case of a born digital document, the exact form and appearance of the cross reference text will be determined dynamically by the software processing the document. In such cases, the <ref> element will have no content, and serve simply to mark a point from which a link is to be made, along with the target of the link.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent:

```
See especially <ref target="#SEC12">section
12 on page 34</ref>.
```

```
See especially <ref target="#SEC12"/>.
```

In both cases, there is a cross reference from the position in the source document immediately following the word *especially* to whatever element in the encoded document has the identifier SEC12. In the first case, the encoder has supplied the original form of the cross reference section 12 on page 34; in the second, the task of generating an appropriate form of cross reference has been left to the formatting software. Perhaps the pagination and section numbers of the document in question are not yet determined; perhaps the cross reference should be replaced by a big red button. In either case, however, the value of the *target* attribute must be the identifier of some other element within the current document. Since the passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, it must be an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a element:

```
 ... see especially <ref target="#SEC12"/>.
...
<div xml:id="SEC12">
 <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

Because the *xml:id* attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:

```
 ... this is discussed in <ref target="#pspec">the paragraph on links</ref> ...
<p xml:id="pspec">Links may be
made to any kind of element ...</p>
```

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an <anchor> element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the <seg> element may be used to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

In the following example, <ref> elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

```
 Returning to <ref target="#ABCD">the point
where I dozed off</ref>, I noticed that <ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref> had
been circled in red by a previous reader
```

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor> and <seg> elements may be used:

```
 .... <anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> .... ....<seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH">
... </seg> ...
```

The *type* attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking* below.

3.7.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the <ref> element may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. The element may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the *target* attribute may be any valid *Uniform Resource Identifier* (URI)[4].

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2`. The hash sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an *xml:id* attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

It is also possible to define an abbreviated form of the URI, using a predefined *prefix* separated from the rest of the code by a colon, as for example cesr:SEC2. This is known as a *private URI*,

[4] A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar URL used to indicate a web page, such as `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`

since the prefix is not standardized (except that the prefix xml: is reserved for use by XML itself). A <prefixDef> element should be supplied within the TEI header specifying how the prefix (here cesr) should be translated to give a full URL for the link. This is particularly useful if a document contains many references to an external document such as an authority file.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a language called Xpointer, also defined by the W3C. This is useful when, for example, the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers. Further information about this and other forms of link addressing is provided in chapter 16 of the TEI Guidelines but is beyond the scope of the present document.

3.7.3 Special Kinds of Linking

The following special purpose *linking* attributes are defined for every element in the TEI simplePrint schema:

ana links an element with its interpretation.

corresp links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.

next links an element to the next element in an aggregate.

prev links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section *10. Analysis*. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence John loves Nancy might be encoded as follows:

```
<seg type="sentence" ana="#SVO">
 <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
 <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
 <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the <seg> element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *type* attribute.

The *corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example:

```
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1"
 corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1"
 corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between the show and Shirley, and between NBC and the network:

```
<p>
 <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>,
which made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on
```

```
<name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule, although <seg xml:id="network" corresp="#nbc">the
network</seg> says <seg xml:id="show" corresp="#shirley">the
   show</seg> still is being considered.
</p>
```

The *next* and *prev* attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-e
debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e,
damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about
me in the dark.
```

4 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

4.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark *corrections*, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark *normalization*, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Consider, for example, the following famous passage as it appears in the first quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*: in particular the phrase we might transcribe directly as

at the turning o'th' Tyde: for after I ſaw him fumble with the Sheets, and play with Flowers, and ſmile vpon his fingers end, I knew there was but one way: for his Noſe was as ſharpe as a Pen, and a Table of greene fields. How now Sir *Iohn* (quoth I?) what man? be a good cheare: ſo a

Figure 1: Detail from *Henry V*, first quarto (1600)

```
... for his Nose was as sharpe as a Pen, and a Table of greene fields
```

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalize) the Elizabethan spellings of *a'* and *sharpe* for *he* and *sharp* respectively. They might also want to emend *table* to *babbl'd*, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

```
... for his Nose was as <reg>sharp</reg> as a
Pen and
<reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> of green fields
```

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

```
... for his Nose was as
<orig>sharpe</orig> as a Pen, and
<orig>a</orig>
<sic>Table</sic> of green fields
```

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the <choice> element.
<choice> (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. This allows an editor to indicate where alternative encodings are possible:

```
... for his Nose was as <choice>
 <orig>sharpe</orig>
 <reg>sharp</reg>
</choice> as a Pen, and
<choice>
 <orig>a</orig>
 <reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
 <corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
 <sic>Table</sic>
</choice> of green fields
```

4.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

<supplied> (supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe.

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read The following elements are provided for for simple editorial interventions. then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second *for*, thus:

```
The
following elements are provided for <del resp="#LB">for</del> simple editorial
interventions.
```

The attribute value #LB on the *resp* attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a <respStmt> element) of the person or other agency responsible for correcting the duplication of *for*.

If the source read The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions. (i.e. if the word *are* had been inadvertently dropped) then the scholar identified as LB might choose to encode the corrected text as follows:

```
The following
elements <add resp="#LB">are</add> provided for simple editorial
interventions.
```

These elements may also be used to record the actual writing process, for example to record passages which have been deleted, added, corrected etc., whether by the author of a literary text or by a scribe copying out a manuscript. An analysis of such documentary modifications may be essential before a reading text can be presented, and is clearly of importance in the editorial process.

The example is taken from the surviving authorial manuscript of a poem by the English writer Wilfred Owen, a part of which is shown here:

Figure 2: Detail from *Dulce et decorum est* autograph manuscript in the English Faculty Library, Oxford University.

Owen first wrote Helping the worst amongst us, but then deleted it, adding Dragging the worst amongt us over the top. In the same way, he revised the phrase half–blind by deleting the half– and adding all above it. In the last line, he started a word beginning fif before deleting it and writing the word five–nines. We can encode all of this as follows:

```
<l>And towards our distant rest began to trudge,</l>
<l>
 <subst>
  <del>Helping the worst amongst us</del>
  <add>Dragging the worst amongt us</add>
 </subst>, who'd no boots
</l>
<l>But limped on, blood-shod. All went lame; <subst>
  <del status="shortEnd">half-</del>
  <add>all</add>
 </subst> blind;</l>
<l>Drunk with fatigue ; deaf even to the hoots</l>
<l>Of tired, outstripped <del>fif</del> five-nines that dropped behind.</l>
```

The tags <add> and <del> elements are used to enclose passages added or deleted respectively. Additional attributes are available such as *resp* to indicate responsibility for the modification, or *place* to indicate where in the text (for example, above or below the line) the modification has been made. Where the encoder wishes to assert that the addition and deletion make up a single editorial act of substitution, these elements can be combined within a <subst> element as shown above.

A very careful examination of Owen's second modification shows that he really did write amongt rather than amongst, presumably in error. An equally careful editor wishing to restore the missing s might use the <supplied> element to indicate that they have done so:

```
<add>Dragging the worst among<supplied resp="#ED">s</supplied>t us</add>
```

Here the *resp* attribute has been used to indicate that the s was not supplied by Owen but by someone else, specifically the person documented elsewhere by an element with the identifier ED.

The <unclear> element is useful where material in the source is so hard to read that the transcriber is uncertain as to whether they have done so correctly. The <gap> element by contrast should be used where the material is so illegible that the transcriber does not wish even to attempt it. The two may however be used together as in the following example:

```
One hundred & twenty good regulars joined <unclear>to me <gap extent="2 words"
  reason="indecipherable"/> and </unclear> instantly, would aid me signally in an
enterprise against Wilmington.
```

The <del> element marks material which is deleted in a source, but has been transcribed as part of the electronic text all the same, while <gap> marks the location of source material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages. An *extent* attribute is available on the <gap> element to indicate how much material has been omitted. The <desc> element can be used inside the <gap> element to provide a brief characterisation of the omitted material, as in the following examples:

```
<p> ... An example of a list appearing in a fief ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name>
 <date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of
honey.</p>
<gap extent="50 lines">
 <desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc>
</gap>
```

```
<p>A description of the overall structure of the account is once again ...
</p>
```

(The <name> and <date> elements used in this example are discussed further below)

Language corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) often systematically omit figures and mathematics:

```
<p>At the bottom of your screen below the
mode line is the <hi>minibuffer</hi>. This is the area where Emacs echoes the
commands you enter and where you specify filenames for Emacs to find, values for
search and replace, and so on. <gap reason="graphic">
  <desc>diagram of Emacs screen</desc>
 </gap>
</p>
```

4.3 Abbreviation and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The <abbr> element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

```
Every
manufacturer of <abbr>3GL</abbr> or <abbr>4GL</abbr> languages is currently nailing
on
<abbr>OOP</abbr> extensions
```

The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The <expan> element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

```
<expan>per</expan>
```

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the <choice> element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
 <abbr>wt</abbr>
 <expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

The elements <expan> and <abbr> should contain a full word, or the abbreviated form of a full word respectively. For a fuller discussion of abbreviations and the intricacies of representing them consult the section on Abbreviation and Expansion in the TEI Guidelines.

5 Names, Codes, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of data-like features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, strings of code, formulae, or numbers and dates. These items may also pose particular problems for natural language processing (NLP) applications. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

5.1 Names and Referring Strings

A *referring string* is any phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. A *name* is a referring string which contains proper nouns and honorifics only. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The *type* attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person">Mr.
   Bennet</name>, </q>said his lady to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <name type="place">Netherfield Park</name> is let at
last?</q>
```

```
It being one of the principles of the
<name type="org">Circumlocution Office</name> never, on any account whatsoever, to
give a straightforward answer, <name type="person">Mr Barnacle</name> said,

<q>Possibly.</q>
```

As the following example shows, the <rs> element may be used for a reference to a person, place, etc., which does not contain a proper noun or noun phrase:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person">Mr.
   Bennet</name>,</q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day...
```

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as *van* or *de la*, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The *ref* attribute provides a way of linking a name with a description of the object being named, and may thus act as a normalized identifier for it. It is also very useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person" ref="#BENM1">Mr. Bennet</name>, </q> said
<rs type="person" ref="#BENM2">his lady</rs> to him
one day,
<q>have you heard that <name type="place" ref="#NETP1">Netherfield
   Park</name> is let at last?</q>
```

The values used for the *ref* attribute here (#BENM1 etc.) are pointers; in this case indicating an element with the identifier BENM1 etc. somewhere in the current document, though any form of URI could be used. The element indicated will typically (for a person) be a <person> element, listed within a <particDesc> element, or (for a place) a <place> element, listed within a <settingDesc> element in the TEI header, as further discussed in *15.3. The Profile Description* below.

This use should be distinguished from the case of the <reg> (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```
<name type="person" ref="#WADLM1">
 <choice>
  <orig>Walter de la Mare</orig>
  <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>
 </choice>
</name> was born at <name ref="https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charlton,_London"
 type="place">Charlton</name>,
in <name type="place">Kent</name>, in 1873.
```

5.2 Formulae, Codes, and Special Characters

The following elements may be useful when marking up sequences of text that represent mathematical expressions, chemical formulae, and the like:

<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula.

<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character.

In many cases, a simple Unicode character suffices to represent the superscript or subscript digits and other symbols which may appear inside a mathematical formula:

```
<formula>E=mc²</formula>
```

In other more complex cases, the encoder may choose to use a different XML scheme (such as MathML) to encode the content of a formula, or a non-XML notation. These possibilities are not discussed further here.

The <g> element is useful in the case that no Unicode character exists to represent the character or glyph required. Its *ref* attribute can be used to point to a definition of the symbol intended, while its content (if any) represents a Unicode approximation to it:

```
...Thereto
<g ref="#air">[air]</g> and ...
```

The TEI header provides a number of additional elements for the definition of such non-Unicode characters, as further discussed in section *15.2.5. The character declaration* below.

The following elements are useful for stretches of code or similar formal language appearing within a text:

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered.

```
 This can be expressed in XML as follows:
<code>&lt;date notBefore="2016-06-23"/></code> Contact the author at

<email>lou.burnard@gmail.com</email>
```

Note in this example that characters which have a syntactic function in XML (such as the ampersand or the angle bracket) must be represented within a TEI simplePrint document by means of an entity reference such as `<` or `&`.

The element <ref> discussed in section *3.7. Cross References and Links* should be used to represent a coded reference such as a link given as a URL within a text, either as content or as an attribute value:

```
<p>Further discussion of <ref target="http://www.tei-c.org/">the Text Encoding
   Initiative website</ref> may be found at <ref>http://www.tei-c.org/</ref>
</p>
```

5.3 Dates and Times

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of times and dates:

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

<time> (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalized versions of their values in various ways.

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

- @*period* supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s, <date>s, or <event>s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
- @*when [att.datable.w3c]* supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
- @*notBefore [att.datable.w3c]* specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
- @*notAfter [att.datable.w3c]* specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

The *when* attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. 1990, September 1990, twelvish) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```
<date when="1980-02-21">21 Feb
1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
<date when="1990-09">September
1990</date>
<date when="--09">September</date>
<date when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept
11th, 12 minutes before 9 am</date>
```

These attributes are typically used to make a date or time more easily processable, as in the following examples:

```
Given on the
<date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand
Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of
the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

```
<l>specially when it's nine below zero</l>
<l>and <time when="15:00:00">three o'clock in the afternoon</time>
</l>
```

They are also useful in cases where the date concerned is uncertain or only vaguely specified:

```
<p>... <date period="secondEmpire">during the second empire</date>
</p>
```

```
<date notAfter="1946-12-09"
 notBefore="1946-11-01">in the weeks shortly before my
birth</date>
```

5.4 Numbers and Measurements

Like dates, both numbers and quantities can be written with either letters or digits and may therefore need to be normalized for ease of processing. Their presentation is also highly language-dependent (e.g. English *5th* becomes Greek *5.*; English *123,456.78* equals French *123.456,78*).

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of numbers and quantities:

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form.

- @*type* indicates the type of numeric value.
- @*value* supplies the value of the number in standard form.

<measure> (measure) contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.

- @*quantity [att.measurement]* (quantity) specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement
- @*unit [att.measurement]* (unit) indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.
- @*commodity [att.measurement]* (commodity) indicates the substance that is being measured

For example:

```
<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>
```

```
<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
 commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="dozen"
 commodity="blooms">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
 commodity="blooms">a yellow tulip</measure>
```

6 Lists

The element <list> is used to mark any kind of *list*. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

<item> (item) contains one component of a list.

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with <item>. The first <item> may optionally be preceded by a <head>, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of items within the list may be omitted, indicated using the *n* attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the <label> element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
 <head>A short list</head>
 <item>First item in list.</item>
 <item>Second item in list.</item>
 <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
 <head>A short list</head>
 <item n="1">First item in list.</item>
 <item n="2">Second item in list.</item>
 <item n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>
<list>
 <head>A short list</head>
 <label>1</label>
 <item>First item in list.</item>
 <label>2</label>
 <item>Second item in list.</item>
 <label>3</label>
 <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a *glossary list*, tagged <list type="gloss">. Here, each item comprises a *term* and a *gloss*, marked with <label> and <item> respectively.

```
<list type="gloss">
 <head>Vocabulary</head>
 <label xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
 <item>now</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
 <item>loudly</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
 <item>blooms</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">med</label>
 <item>meadow</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
 <item>wood</item>
 <label xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
 <item>ewe</item>
<!-- <label xml:lang="enm">lhouth</label>
<item>lows</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">sterteth</label>
<item>bounds, frisks</item>
```

```
<label xml:lang="enm">verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">murie</label>
<item>merrily</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">swik</label>
<item>cease</item>
<label xml:lang="enm">naver</label>
<item>never</item>-->
</list>
```

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined in section *8. Tables*.

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```
<list type="gloss">
 <label>EVIL</label>
 <item>
  <list type="simple">
   <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of
       recovery.</item>
   <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be
       miserable.</item>
   <item>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human
       society.</item>
  </list>
 </item>
 <label>GOOD</label>
 <item>
  <list type="simple">
   <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
   <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from
       death...</item>
   <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no
       sustenances....</item>
  </list>
 </item>
</list>
```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the <listBibl> element, described in the next section.

7 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element <bibl> is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to distinguish at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details:

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

Consider, for example the following editorial note:

> He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, *Harvard Studies* 5. 88ff).

This might be encoded as follows:

```
He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire
in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to <bibl>
 <author>Kittredge</author>,
<title>Harvard Studies</title> 5. 88ff
</bibl>).
```

The bibliographic elements listed above are particularly useful in a born digital document which contains a bibliography encoded using the <listBibl> element. Entries in the bibliography should be given an identifier, which can then be used as the target of cross references from elsewhere in the document:

```
<p>Perec citing, amongst others <ref target="#MK_73">Sturm und Drang, 1973</ref>,
concludes ... </p>
```

A <bibl> element may contain simply text, with possibly a few of its components distinguished by tagging, and much use of conventionalized punctuation, as in this example:

```
<bibl xml:id="MK_73">Sturm, U. & Drang, F. : <title>Musikalische
   Katastrophe</title>. (Berlin, W. de Gruyter, 1973)</bibl>
```

Alternatively, each of the components of the bibliographic reference may be clearly distinguished by tagging; in this case there is no requirement for conventionalized punctuation, since the processor will be able to generate this appropriately:

```
<bibl xml:id="MK73">
 <author>Sturm, U.</author>
 <author>Drang, F.</author>
 <title xml:lang="de" level="m">Musikalische Katastrophe</title>
 <pubPlace>Berlin</pubPlace>
```

```
 <publisher>W. de Gruyter</publisher>
 <date>1973</date>
</bibl>
```

The element <biblFull> is also provided for convience in cases where bibliographic citations following a more sophisticated model have been used; it is permitted only in the TEI header.

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

The <listBibl> element is used to group lists of bibliographic citations. It may contain a series of <bibl> or <biblFull> elements.

8 Tables

The following elements are provided for the description of tabular matter, commonly found in many kinds of narrative text. Note that TEI simplePrint provides no sophisticated ways of describing the detailed layout of a table beyond its organization into rows and columns.

<table> (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

<row> (row) contains one row of a table.

<cell> (cell) contains one cell of a table.

The *role* attribute may be used on either <cell> or <row>to indicate the function of a cell, or of a row of cells. Its values should be taken from the following list:

data data cell

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

```
<p>It was indeed coming on amain, for the
burials that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:—
<table rows="5" cols="4">
  <row role="data">
   <cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
   <cell>64</cell>
   <cell>84</cell>
   <cell>119</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
   <cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
   <cell>65</cell>
   <cell>105</cell>
   <cell>116</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
   <cell role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
   <cell>213</cell>
   <cell>421</cell>
   <cell>554</cell>
  </row>
 </table>
```

```
</p>
<p>This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and
unchristian method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ...
</p>
```

9 Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

<graphic> (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it.

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the <figure> element itself, in a <head> and one or more <p> elements, as may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a <figDesc> element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example:

```
<pb n="412"/>
<figure>
 <graphic url="images/p412fig.png"
  width="40%"/>
</figure>
<pb n="413"/>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The <graphic> element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer's ornament as a heading:

```
<head>
 <graphic url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at the least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the <head> element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure, as in the following example: The <figure> element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic block. It may also include a brief description of the image:

Figure 3: *Mr Fezziwig's Ball*: illustration by George Cruikshank from Dickens' *A Christmas Carol* (1843)

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="images/fezzipic.png"/>
 <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
 <figDesc>A Cruikshank engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of
   revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The *facs* attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simplest case, the *facs* attribute on the <pb> element may be used to supply a location for an image file corresponding with that point in the text:

```
<div>
 <pb facs="page1.png" n="1"/>
<!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
 <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
<!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</div>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file `page1.png` etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If multiple images are provided for each page, or more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are needed, as further discussed in *14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile* below.

10 Analysis

10.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of canonical reference. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:
<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the <s> element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking *orthographic sentences*, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
 <pb n="474"/>
 <p>
  <s n="001">Reader, I married him.</s>
  <s n="002">A quiet wedding we had:</s>
  <s n="003">he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</s>
  <s n="004">When
     we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where
Mary
     was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —</s>
 </p>
 <p>
  <q>
   <s n="005">Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</s>
```

```
  </q> ...
 </p>
</div>
```

Note that <s> elements cannot nest: the beginning of one <s> element implies that the previous one has finished. When s-units are tagged as shown above, it is advisable to tag the entire text end-to-end, so that every word in the text being analyzed will be contained by exactly one <s> element, whose identifier can then be used to specify a unique reference for it. If the identifiers used are unique within the document, then the *xml:id* attribute might be used in preference to the *n* attribute used in the above example.

10.2 Words and Punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, can't in English or du in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

<c> (character) represents a character.

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI simplePrint as follows:

```
<s n="1">
 <w ana="#NP0">Marley</w>
 <w ana="#VBD">was</w>
 <w ana="#AJ0">dead</w>
 <pc>:</pc>
 <w ana="#TO0">to</w>
 <w ana="#VBB">begin</w>
 <w ana="#PRP">with</w>
 <pc ana="#SENT">.</pc>
</s>
```

In this example, each token in the input has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the *ana* attribute discussed in section *3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking* above. The system has also distinguished between tokens to be treated as words (tagged <w>) and tokens considered to be punctuation (tagged <pc>). It may also sometimes be useful to distinguish tokens which consist of a single letter or character: the <c> element is provided for this purpose.

The <w> also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the *lemma* attribute, or by reference, using the *lemmaRef* attribute, as in this example:

```
...<w ana="#VBD" lemma="be"
 lemmaRef="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</w> ...
```

10.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The <w> element is a specialisation of the <seg> element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see

section *3.7. Cross References and Links*); it can be used to distinguish any portion of text to which the encoder wishes to assign a user-specified *type* or a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the TEI Guidelines provide no apostrophe element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the <q> element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the *who* attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the <seg> element as follows:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
 <p>
  <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had:
   ...</p>
</div>
```

The *type* attribute on the <seg> element can take any value, and so can be used to distinguish phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the TEI header or in the documentation of the encoding system.

11 Common Attributes

Some attributes are available on many elements, though not on all. These attributes are defined using a TEI attribute class, a concept which is discussed further in the TEI Guidelines. We list here some attribute classes which have been adapted or customized for use in TEI simplePrint.

The elements <add>, <figure>, <fw>, <label>, <note> and <stage> all take the attribute *place* to indicate whereabouts on the page they appear. In TEI simplePrint the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

@*place* specifies where this item is placed.

above above the line

below below the line

top at the top of the page

top-right at the top right of the page

top-left at the top left of the page

top-centre at the top center of the page

bottom-right at the bottom right of the page

bottom-left at the bottom left of the page

bottom-centre at the bottom centre of the page

bottom at the foot of the page

tablebottom underneath a table

margin-right in the right-hand margin

margin in the outer margin

margin-inner in the inner margin

margin-left in the left-hand margin

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

overstrike superimposed on top of the current context

end at the end of the volume

divend at the end of the current division

parend at the end of the current paragraph

inline within the body of the text

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe

block formatted as an indented paragraph

The elements <add>, **<am>**, <corr>, <date>, <del>, **<ex>**, <expan>, <gap>, <name>, <reg>, **<space>**, <subst>, <supplied>, <time> and <unclear> all use the attribute *unit* to indicate the units in which the size of the feature concerned is expressed. In TEI simplePrint the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:
att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.
@*unit* names the unit used for the measurement

chars characters

lines lines

pages pages

words words

cm centimetres

mm millimetres

in inches

Very many TEI elements take the value *type* (see the specification for att.typed for a full list). In most cases, no constraint is placed on the possible values for this attribute. In the case of the element <name> however, the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:
<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.
@*type* characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

person person

forename forename

surname surname

personGenName generational name component

personRoleName role or position in society

personAddName additional name component (e.g. nickname)

nameLink connecting link within a name (e.g. van der)

org organization

country country

placeGeog geographical name

place place

12 Composite and Floating Texts

A composite text, like a simple text, has an optional front and back matter. In between however, instead of a single body, it contains one or more discrete texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. The following elements are provided to handle composite texts of various kinds.

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes.

<teiCorpus> (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

A typical example might be an anthology containing several distinct works, or any other kind of collection, encoded using an overall structure like this:

```
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!--[ header information for the composite ]-->
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <front>
<!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->
  </front>
  <group>
   <text>
    <front>
<!--[ front matter of first text ]-->
    </front>
    <body>
<!--[ body of first text ]-->
    </body>
    <back>
<!--[ back matter of first text ]-->
    </back>
   </text>
   <text>
    <front>
<!--[ front matter of second text]-->
    </front>
    <body>
<!--[ body of second text ]-->
```

```
     </body>
     <back>
<!--[ back matter of second text ]-->
     </back>
    </text>
<!--[ more texts or groups of texts here ]-->
   </group>
   <back>
<!--[ back matter for the composite ]-->
   </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

A different kind of composite text occurs when one text is embedded within another, as for example in the *Arabian Nights* or similar collections of stories, or in other cases where one narrative is interrupted by another. The element <floatingText> may be preferred to encode such materials as the following:

```
<p>The Gentleman having finish'd his Story, Galecia waited on him to the
Stairs-head;
and at her return, casting her Eyes on the Table, she saw lying there an old dirty
rumpled Book, and found in it the following story:</p>
<floatingText>
 <body>
  <p>IN the time of the Holy War when Christians from all parts went into the Holy
     Land to oppose the Turks; Amongst these there was a certain English
Knight...</p>
<!-- rest of story here -->
  <p>The King graciously pardoned the Knight; Richard was kindly receiv'd into his
     Convent, and all things went on in good order: But from hence came the
Proverb, We
     must not strike <hi>Robert</hi> for <hi>Richard.</hi>
  </p>
 </body>
</floatingText>
<pb n="43"/>
<p>By this time Galecia's Maid brought up her Supper; after which she cast her Eyes
again on the foresaid little Book, where she found the following Story ....</p>
```

Note that there is only a single TEI header for composite texts of either kind, since the assumption is that the composite is at some level describable as a single work. However, it is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own TEI header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and must itself have a TEI header:

```
<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for the corpus]-->
 </teiHeader>
 <TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for first text]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
<!--[first text in corpus]-->
  </text>
 </TEI>
 <TEI>
```

```
  <teiHeader>
<!--[header information for second text]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
<!--[second text in corpus]-->
  </text>
 </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one <teiCorpus> element may contain many nested <teiCorpus> elements rather than many nested <TEI> elements, to any depth considered necessary.

13 Front and Back Matter

13.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information.The TEI Guidelines provide a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

13.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element <titlePage>. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

<titlePart> (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

<byline> (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

<epigraph> (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the *rendition* attribute when necessary, as described above though a very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not easily done. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the *xml:lang* attribute or the <foreign> element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the <name> element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV
  <hi>BOOKS</hi>.</titlePart>
  <titlePart>To which is added <title>SAMSON AGONISTES</title>.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>
 </byline>
 <docImprint>
  <name>LONDON</name>, Printed by <name>J.M.</name> for <name>John
     Starkey</name> at the <name>Mitre</name> in <name>Fleetstreet</name>, near
 <name>Temple-Bar.</name>
 </docImprint>
 <docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman
     Conquest;</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">with anecdotes of their courts.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <titlePart>Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents
   private as well as public.</titlePart>
 <docEdition>New edition, with corrections and additions</docEdition>
 <byline>By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor>
 </byline>
 <epigraph>
  <q>The treasures of antiquity laid up in old historic rolls, I opened.</q>
  <bibl>BEAUMONT</bibl>
 </epigraph>
 <docImprint>Philadelphia: Blanchard and Lea</docImprint>
 <docDate>1860.</docDate>
</titlePage>
```

As elsewhere, the *ref* attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

```
<byline>By <docAuthor>
  <name ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes Strickland</name>
 </docAuthor>
</byline>
```

13.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using elements; the following suggested values for the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

preface A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text.

dedication A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

abstract A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose.

ack A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text.

contents A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The <list> element should be used to mark its structure.

frontispiece A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the *type* attribute.

13.1.3 Liminal Elements

All text divisions, whether in front matter or elsewhere, may begin and end with one or more components which we term *liminal elements*, because they begin or end the division. A typical example is a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the <head> element; but there are many other possibilities:

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

<byline> (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

<dateline> (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

<argument> (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<imprimatur> (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

<opener> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, bylines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

As an example, the beginning and end of the dedication to Milton's *Comus* might be marked up as follows:

```
<div type="dedication">
 <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir
   apparent to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
 <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
 <p>THis <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your Self,
   and others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your
   attendant <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
 <closer>
  <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
  <signed>
   <name>H. LAWES.</name>
```

```
  </signed>
 </closer>
</div>
```

13.2 Back Matter

13.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the <back> element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the *type* attribute:

appendix An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

glossary A list of terms associated with definition texts (glosses): this should be encoded as a <list type="gloss"> element.

notes A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

bibliogr A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a <listBibl>.

index Any form of pre-existing index to the work

colophon A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

13.2.2 Specialized Front and Back Matter

TEI simplePrint also provides elements for some additional components of front or back matter which are characteristic of particular kinds of text, in particular old play texts. These often include lists of dramatis personae and notes about the setting of a play, for which the following elements are provided:

<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae.

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles.

<castGroup> (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual <castItem> elements within a cast list.

<role> (role) contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list.

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character's role in a drama.

<actor> contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list.

<set> (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction).

Note that these elements are intended for use in marking up cast lists and setting notes as they appear in a source document. They are not intended for use when marking up definitive lists of the different roles identified in a play, except in so far as that may have been their original purpose.

The following example shows one way of encoding the last part of Shakespeare's *Tempest*, as printed in the first folio:

```
<back>
 <div type="epilogue">
  <head>Epilogue, spoken by Prospero.</head>
  <sp>
   <l>Now my Charmes are all ore-throwne,</l>
   <l>And what strength I have's mine owne</l>
   <l>As you from crimes would pardon'd be,</l>
   <l>Let your Indulgence set me free.</l>
  </sp>
  <stage>Exit</stage>
 </div>
 <set>
  <p>The Scene, an un-inhabited Island.</p>
 </set>
 <castList>
  <head>Names of the Actors.</head>
  <castItem>Alonso, K. of Naples</castItem>
  <castItem>Sebastian, his Brother.</castItem>
  <castItem>Prospero, the right Duke of Millaine.</castItem>
<!-- etc -->
 </castList>
 <trailer>FINIS</trailer>
</back>
```

14 Encoding a Digital Facsimile

The following elements may be used to encode a text represented by a collection of digital images, either alone or in conjunction with a textual transcription.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and, when using an embedded transcription approach, transcriptions of the writing within them.

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element.

As mentioned in section *9. Figures and Graphics* above, a TEI simplePrint document may reference a set of page images, alone, or in combination with a transcription. For ease of management, it is strongly recommended that the <graphic> elements representing those page images be grouped together within a <facsimile> element, as in the following example:

```
<facsimile>
 <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="pg1"/>
 <graphic url="page2.png" xml:id="pg2"/>
</facsimile>
```

If a transcription is supplied in addition, the *xml:id* values can be used to align the page breaks within it with the relevant image, rather than using the URL given on the <graphic> element.

```
<text>
<!-- ...-->
 <pb facs="#page1"/>
<!-- text contained on page 1 -->
 <pb facs="#page2"/>
<!-- text contained on page 2 -->
<!-- ...-->
</text>
```

The <surface> element is useful in two situations: when it is desired to group different images of the same page, for example of different resolutions; and when it is desired to align parts of a page image with parts of a transcription. The <zone> element is used to define (and hence provide an identifier for) the location of a part of an image with reference to the surface on which it appears.

In this example, a thumbnail and a high resolution image are associated with the same surface:

```
<facsimile>
 <surface>
  <graphic xml:id="page1T"
   url="thumbs/page1.png"/>
  <graphic xml:id="page1" url="page1.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

In this example, the <head> element in the transcription is aligned with the top half of a square image:

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="1" uly="1" lrx="4" lry="4">
  <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="page1"/>
  <zone xml:id="topHalfP1" ulx="1" uly="1"
   lrx="2" lry="4"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
<text>
 <body>
<!-- ... -->
  <pb facs="#page1"/>
  <head facs="#topHalfP1">Text of Heading</head>
<!-- ...-->
 </body>
</text>
```

A more detailed explanation of the use of these attributes and other associated elements is given in the full TEI Guidelines.

15 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element <teiHeader> and has four major parts:

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the *type* attribute indicates the type of header. <teiHeader type="corpus"> introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more <p>s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in *Stmt* (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

15.1 The File Description

The <fileDesc> element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.

<editionStmt> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

<extent> (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as born digital for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal TEI header has the following structure:

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
<!-- [ bibliographic description of the digital resource ] -->
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
<!-- [ information about how the resource is distributed ] -->
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
<!-- [ information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived ]
-->
  </sourceDesc>
 </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

15.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the <titleStmt> to provide information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content:

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to

encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital original may be similar to that of its source but should be distinct from it, for example: `[title of source]: TEI XML edition` or `A machine readable version of: [title of source]`

The generic <respStmt> element may be used to indicate any kind of responsibility, ranging from a funder or sponsor to an illustrator or editor. It contains the following subcomponents:

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work.

<name> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
 <title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe </title>
 <author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>TEI encoding</resp>
  <name>James D. Benson</name>
 </respStmt>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>Funding </resp>
  <name>Getty Foundation</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

15.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where *edition* is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
 <edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
 </edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

15.1.3 The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```
<extent>15 Mb
</extent>
```

15.1.4 The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<distributor> (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

At least one of these elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<address> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

Example:

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media
   Centre</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Victoria, BC</pubPlace>
 <date>2011</date>
 <availability status="restricted">
  <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/"> Distributed
     under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License
  </licence>
 </availability>
</publicationStmt>
```

15.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The <seriesStmt> element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain <title>, <idno>, or <respStmt> elements.

The <notesStmt>, if used, contains one or more <note> elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

15.1.6 The Source Description

The <sourceDesc> is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton
```

```
   Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>
  <author>CNN Network News</author>
  <title>News headlines</title>
  <date>12 Jun 1989</date>
 </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

15.2 The Encoding Description

The <encodingDesc> element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain more specialized elements chosen from the following list:

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in selecting texts, or parts of a text, for inclusion in the resource.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

<tagsDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document.

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs.

<prefixDef> (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs.

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

15.2.1 Project Description and Sampling Declaration

Examples of <projectDesc> and <samplingDecl>:

```
<encodingDesc>
 <projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990. </p>
 </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>
```

```
<encodingDesc>
 <samplingDecl>
```

```
  <p>Samples of 2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</p>
 </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

15.2.2 Editorial Declarations

The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph:

correction how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

normalization the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

quotation what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

hyphenation what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

segmentation how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

interpretation what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```
<editorialDecl>
 <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and
   has not been checked.</p>
 <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling
   checker.</p>
 <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th Collegiate
   dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
```

The full TEI Guidelines provide specialized elements for each of the topics above; these are not however included in TEI simplePrint.

15.2.3 Tagging Declaration

When it does not consist simply of a prose description, the <tagsDecl> element may contain a number of more specialized elements providing additional information about how the document concerned has been marked up. The following elements may be used:

<rendition> (rendition) supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text.

<namespace> (namespace) supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong.

<tagUsage> (element usage) documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document.

Here is a simple example, showing how these elements may be used. It indicates the number of times the elements <hi> and <title> from the TEI namespace have been used in the document. It also documents how the way that the source document was originally printed has been represented using TEI tagging:

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
 <rendition xml:id="rend-bo">font-weight:bold</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="rend-it"
  selector="hi, title">font-style:italic</rendition>
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"/>
  <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"/>
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

The <rendition> elements here contain fragments expressed in the W3C standard Cascading Stylesheets language (CSS). Their function here is to associate the particular styles concerned with an identifier (for example rend-bo) which can then be pointed to from elsewhere within the document by means of the *rendition* attribute mentioned in section *3.5.1. Changes of Typeface, etc.* above. To indicate, for example, that a particular name in the document was rendered in a bold font it might be tagged <name rendition="#rend-bo">. The *selector* attribute used in the preceding example is used to indicate once for all a default rendition value to be associated with several elements: in this example, unless otherwise indicated, it is assumed that the content of each <hi> and each <title> element was originally rendered using an italic font.

For TEI simplePrint, a large set of such rendition definitions has been predefined. The encoder is not therefore required to supply any detailed declarations, but can refer to the predefined list using the following list:

simple:allcaps all capitals

simple:blackletter black letter or gothic typeface

simple:bold bold typeface

simple:bottombraced marked with a brace under the bottom of the text

simple:boxed border around the text

simple:centre centred text

simple:cursive cursive typeface

simple:display block display

simple:doublestrikethrough strikethrough with double line

simple:doubleunderline underlined with double line

simple:dropcap initial letter larger or decorated

simple:float floated out of main flow

simple:hyphen with a hyphen here (e.g. in line break)

simple:inline inline rendering

simple:justify justified text

simple:italic italic typeface

simple:larger larger type

simple:left aligned to the left or left-justified

simple:leftbraced marked with a brace on the left side of the text

simple:letterspace larger-than-normal spacing between letters, usually for emphasis

simple:literal fixed-width typeface, spacing preserved

simple:normalstyle upright shape and default weight of typeface

simple:normalweight normal typeface weight

simple:right aligned to the right or right-justified

simple:rightbraced marked with a brace to the right of the text

simple:rotateleft rotated to the left

simple:rotateright rotated to the right

simple:smallcaps small caps

simple:smaller smaller type

simple:strikethrough strikethrough

simple:subscript subscript

simple:superscript superscript

simple:topbraced marked with a brace above the text

simple:typewriter fixed-width typeface, like typewriter

simple:underline underlined with single line

simple:wavyunderline underlined with wavy line

The simple: prefix used here must be mapped to a location at which the full rendition declaration can be found, by default the XML source of the present document.

Full details of the way these elements may be used are provided in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines (`http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57`).

15.2.4 Reference, Prefix, and Classification Declarations

The <refsDecl> element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```
<refsDecl>
 <p>The @n attribute on each <div> element contains the canonical reference for
   each division in the form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral
   and yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
 <p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The <listPrefixDef> element contains one or more <prefixDef> elements, each defining a prefix which has been used to abbreviate references to other documents, for example as the value of a *target* or other pointing attribute. The definition provides information about how the prefix can be translated automatically into a full URL, as in the following example:

```
<listPrefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="psn"
  matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
  replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/personography.xml#$1"/>
</listPrefixDef>
```

In this case, a pointer value in the form psn:MDH would be translated to `http://www.example.com/personography.xml#MDH`.

The <classDecl> element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes or *taxonomies* used by other parts of the header. These schemes may be defined in a number of different ways, using one or more of the following elements:

<taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<category> (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal `<textDesc>`.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```
<classDecl>
 <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
  <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings </bibl>
 </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
 <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
 <category xml:id="B.A">
  <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="B.A1">
   <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A2">
   <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A3">
   <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A4">
   <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A5">
   <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A6">
   <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
  </category>
```

```
 </category>
 <category xml:id="B.D">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="B.D1">
   <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.D2">
   <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
  </category>
 </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the <catRef> element within the <textClass> element, as described in the next section.

15.2.5 The character declaration

As mentioned in section *5.2. Formulae, Codes, and Special Characters* above, the element <g> is used to indicate the presence of a nonstandard character or glyph in a transcription, and to reference a definition or description of it in the Header. These definitions are provided by means of the following specialised elements given within the <charDecl> component of the <encodingDesc>:

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented.

<mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the *type* attribute.

For example, the alchemical symbol for air might be encoded where it appears in a text using a <g> element, whose *ref* attribute might have a value #air to link to the following simple definition for the symbol concerned:

```
<char xml:id="air">
 <unicodeProp name="Name"
  value="ALCHEMICAL SYMBOL FOR AIR"/>
 <mapping type="standard">🜬</mapping>
</char>
```

Further details of these and related elements are provided in section `http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/WD.html#D25-20` of the TEI Guidelines.

15.3 The Profile Description

The <profileDesc> element gathers together information about various descriptive aspects of a text. It has the following optional components:

<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.

<abstract> contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder.

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The <creation> element documents where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there:

Example:

```
<creation>
 <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
 <name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The <abstract> element may be used to provide a brief summary or abstract of the document concerned. It is most usually applied to texts born digital:

```
<profileDesc>
 <abstract>
  <p>This paper is a draft studying various aspects of using the TEI as a reference
     serialization framework for LMF. Comments are welcome to bring this to a
useful
     document for the community.</p>
 </abstract>
</profileDesc>
```

The <particDesc> element is used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional participants in a text, for example the characters in a novel or a play. It contains at least one <listPerson> element, which contains individual <person> elements.

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

<person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

For example:

```
<profileDesc>
 <particDesc>
  <listPerson>
   <person xml:id="OPI">
    <p>
     <name>Dr Opimian</name>: named for the famous Roman fine wine.</p>
   </person>
   <person xml:id="GRM">
    <p>
     <name>Mr Gryll</name>: named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses'
         sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier
in
         that state than as a man.</p>
   </person>
  </listPerson>
 </particDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

In the same way, the <settingDesc> element can be used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional places mentioned in a text. It contains at least one <listPlace> element, which contains individual <place> elements.

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location.

For example:

```
<profileDesc>
 <settingDesc>
  <listPlace>
   <head>Houses mentioned in <title>Pride and Prejudice</title>
   </head>
   <place xml:id="NETF1">
    <p>
     <name>Netherfield Park</name>: home of the Bingleys</p>
   </place>
   <place xml:id="PEMB1">
    <p>
     <name>Pemberley</name>: home of Mr Darcy</p>
   </place>
  </listPlace>
 </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

The full TEI Guidelines provide a rich range of additional elements to define more structured information about persons and places; these are not however available in TEI Simple.

The <langUsage> element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain <language> elements to document each particular language used:

<language> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
 <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian Business English</language>
 <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

The <textClass> element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the <classDecl> element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the <classCode> element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the <taxonomy> element discussed in the preceding subsection, the <catRef> element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as Press reportage - Sunday and also as Religion might be documented as follows:

```
<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>
```

The element <keywords> contains one or more keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text, each tagged as a <term>. As usual, the attribute *scheme* identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a <taxonomy> element as above:

```
<textClass>
 <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
  <term>English literature</term>
  <term>History and criticism</term>
  <term>Data processing.</term>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

15.4 Other forms of metadata

The TEI header was one of the first attempts to provide a full range of metadata elements, but it is by no means the only standard now used for this purpose. To facilitate the management of large digital collections and to simplify interoperability of TEI and non-TEI resources, the following element may be found useful:

<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed.

A typical use for this element might be to store a set of descriptors conforming to the Dublin Core standard in the TEI header rather than to generate them automatically from the corresponding TEI elements. For examples and discussion, see the TEI Guidelines at http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD9

15.5 The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each significant change made to a text may be recorded. It is always the last element in a <teiHeader> and contains the following elements:

<change> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file.

<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text.

Each <change> element contains a brief description of a significant change. The attributes *when* and *who* may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the person responsible for it.

It is good practice (but not required) to group changes together within a <listChange> element.

Example:

```
<revisionDesc>
 <listChange>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB">deleted chapter 10</change>
  <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM">completed first draft</change>
 </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such *version control systems*, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI header of a file automatically.

16 The Simple Processing Model

Unlike most other TEI customizations, TEI simplePrint includes documentation of the intended processing associated with the majority of elements. As noted above, the TEI provides components such as the *rendition* attribute to indicate the appearance of particular parts of a document in the non-digital source from which it is derived. With TEI simplePrint, it is also possible to indicate how in general an element should be processed, in particular its intended appearance when processed for display on a screen or on paper. This ability derives from a number of capabilities recently added to the TEI architecture for the specification of processing, which were developed as part of the project that defined the TEI simplePrint schema.

The key feature of this Processing Model is a notation that allows the encoder to associate each element with one or more categories, which we call its *behaviour*s. In addition, the Processing Model indicates how the element should be rendered, possibly differently in differing circumstances, using the W3C Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) mentioned above. It is consequently much easier to develop processors for documents conforming to TEI simplePrint, since the complexity of the task is much reduced.

Twenty-five different behaviours are currently defined by the TEI Processing Model. Their names indicate informally the categorization concerned, and should be readily comprehensible for most programmers. The following table indicates the TEI simplePrint elements associated with each:

Behavi	Used by	Effect
alternate	choice date	support display of alternative visualizations, for example by displaying the preferred content, by displaying both in parallel, or by toggling between the two.
anchor	anchor	create an identifiable anchor point in the output.
block	address addrLine argument back body byline closer dateline div docTitle epigraph figure floatingText formula front fw group head imprimatur l lg listBibl note opener postscript q quote role roleDesc salute signed sp speaker spGrp stage titlePage titlePart trailer	create a block structure
body	text	create the body of a document
break	cb lb pb	create a line, column, or page break according to the value of type
cell	cell	create a table cell

cit	cit	show the content, with an indication of the source
document	TEI	start a new output document
glyph	g	show a character by looking up reference to a chardesc at the given URI
graphic	graphic	if URL is present, use it to display graphic, else display a placeholder image
heading	head	creates a heading
index	body	generate list according to type
inline	abbr actor add am author bibl biblScope c choice code corr date del desc docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint editor email ex expan figDesc figure foreign formula fw g gap hi label measure milestone name note num orig pc q quote ref reg relatedItem rhyme rs s salute seg sic signed subst supplied time title unclear w	creates inline element out of content if there's something in `<outputRendition>`, use that formatting; otherwise just show text of selected content
link	ref	create hyperlink
list	castGroup castList list listBibl	create a list
listItem	bibl castItem item	create a list item
metadata	teiHeader	create metadata section
note	note	create a note, often out of line, depending on the value of place; could be margin, footnote, endnote, inline
omit	author editor publisher pubPlace profileDesc revisionDesc encodingDesc	do nothing, do not process children
paragraph	ab p	create a paragraph out of content
row	row	create a table row
section	div	create a new section of the output document
table	table	create a table
text	title	create literal text
title	fileDesc	create document title

Full documentation of the Processing Model is provided in section `http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDPM` of the TEI Guidelines, and we do not describe it further here.

17 The TEI simplePrint schema

Like other TEI customizations, TEI simplePrint is defined by reference to the TEI Guidelines. The following reference documentation provides formal specifications for each element, model class, attribute class, macro and datatype it uses. These concepts are further explained in the TEI Guidelines.

Specifications are provided here for each component which has been modified for inclusion in TEI simplePrint. Almost every textual element has been modified, if only to include a processing model component. Note that the cross references included in these specifications are to the section of the full TEI Guidelines where the subject is treated, and not to sections of the present document.

17.1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.describedResource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI text

transcr: facsimile

Note As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except <egXML>) this element is in the TEI namespace (see 5.7.2. Namespaces). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 as the value of the XML namespace declaration (xmlns), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: <TEI version="4.8.1" xml:lang="it" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.

Example

```
<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
          version using a namespace.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <body>
   <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
  </body>
 </text>
</TEI>
```

Example

```
<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png"/>
  <graphic url="page3.png"/>
  <graphic url="page4.png"/>
 </facsimile>
</TEI>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.resource"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element TEI
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* ) | TEI+ ) )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="document"/>`

<ab>

(anonymous block) contains any component-level unit of text, acting as a container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the same constraints as, a paragraph. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

Module linking

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.fragmentable
  - *@part*
- att.typed
  - *@type*

- *@subtype*

- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of macro.abContent model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote sp stage

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: abstract availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc langUsage licence prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc

linking: ab

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined. Unlike paragraphs, <ab> may nest and may use the *type* and *subtype* attributes.

Example

```
<div type="book" n="Genesis">
 <div type="chapter" n="1">
  <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>
  <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
     darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
     spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab>
  <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>
<!-- ...-->
 </div>
</div>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:ab">

<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:figure | parent::tei:note">
Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab, unless ab is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText.
</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.abContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ab
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.fragmentable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.abContent}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="paragraph"/>`

<abbr>

(abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc

  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` (type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **suspension** (suspension) the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction (contraction) the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription (superscription) the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym (acronym) the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title (title) the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)

organization (organization) the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic (geographic) the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<choice>
 <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
 <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
 <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
 <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice>
 <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
 <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element abbr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<abstract>

contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*

- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: list listBibl p

figures: table

linking: ab

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

Note This element is intended only for cases where no abstract is available in the original source. Any abstract already present in the source document should be encoded as a within the <front>, as it should for a born-digital document.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <abstract resp="#LB">
  <p>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of
     skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From
     a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline
     or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that
     methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic
     subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and
     generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex
     ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated,
     even without the use of a computer. </p>
 </abstract>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
  <elementRef key="listBibl"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element abstract
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike | model.listLike | listBibl )+
}
```

<actor> contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*

@sex specifies the sex of the actor.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard.

@gender specifies the gender of the actor.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter 14. Names, Dates, People, and Places discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

Example

```
<castItem>
 <role>Mathias</role>
 <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
 <actor ref="https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Irving">Mr. Henry
Irving</actor>
</castItem>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element actor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   attribute sex { list { + } }?,
   attribute gender { list { + } }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<add>

(addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*

  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    * *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.transcriptional
  - *@status*
  - *@cause*
  - *@seq*
  - att.editLike
  - att.placement
    * *@place*
  - att.written
    * *@hand*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.

In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example

```
The story I am
going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the
consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which
this tale takes its title.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element add
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
```

```
att.transcriptional.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>color: green; text-decoration: underline;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Example

```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
 <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<addrLine>
 <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>white-space: nowrap;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<address>

(address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence publicationStmt rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note pb rs

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

Example Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:

```
<address>
 <street>via Marsala 24</street>
 <postCode>40126</postCode>
 <name>Bologna</name>
 <name>Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:

```
<address>
 <street>via Marsala 24</street>
 <postCode>40126</postCode>
 <settlement>Bologna</settlement>
 <country>Italy</country>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
 <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
 <country key="FR"/>
 <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
 <postCode>69002</postCode>
 <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
 <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
 <street>
  <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>
</address>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element address
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-top: 2em; margin-left: 2em; margin-right: 2em;
 margin-bottom: 2em;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap 17.5. Correspondence and Alignment]

Module linking

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element anchor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="anchor">
<param name="id" value="@xml:id"/>
</model>
```

<argument>

(argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*

  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Example

```
<argument>
 <l>With ſighs and tears her love he doth deſire,</l>
 <l>Since Cupid hath his ſenſes ſet on fire;</l>
 <l>His torment and his pain to her he ſhews,</l>
 <l>With all his proteſtations and his vows:</l>
 <l>At laſt ſhe yields to grant him ſome relief,</l>
 <l>And make him joyful after all his grief.</l>
</argument>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element argument
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   ( ( model.global | model.headLike )*, ( ( model.common, model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-bottom: 0.5em;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<author>

(author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*

    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.datable
    - *@period*
    - att.datable.w3c
        - *@when*
        - *@notBefore*
        - *@notAfter*
        - *@from*
        - *@to*
- att.naming
    - *@role*
    - *@nymRef*
    - att.canonical
        - *@ref*

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
 <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName>
and
<persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
 <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
   Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element author
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
 behaviour="omit"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<availability>

(availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking

    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

`@status` (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **free** (free) the text is freely available.

unknown (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.

restricted (restricted) the text is not freely available.

Member of model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

May contain

core: p

header: licence

linking: ab

Note A consistent format should be adopted

Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
 <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
 <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
 <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Example

```
<availability>
 <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
  <p>The MIT License
     applies to this document.</p>
  <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
  <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining
a copy
     of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
to deal
     in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the
rights
     to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or
sell
```

```
      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
      furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
  <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
included in
      all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
  <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
EXPRESS OR
      IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY,
      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT
SHALL THE
      AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR
OTHER
      LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE,
ARISING FROM,
      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER
DEALINGS IN
      THE SOFTWARE.</p>
 </licence>
</availability>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:availability"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element availability
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
   ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

<back>

(back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [4.7. Back Matter 4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*

- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Contained by: *textstructure:* floatingText text
transcr: facsimile
May contain
core: cb gap head lb list listBibl milestone note p pb
drama: castList set
figures: figure table
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw
Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical.
Example

```
<back>
 <div type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be
misled by Trinkets
     and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after
she became rich, she
     had like to have been, too fond of Money
<!-- .... -->
  </p>
 </div>
<!-- ... -->
 <div type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please;

<!-- ... -->
  </p>
 </div>
 <div type="advert">
```

```
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
     Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
   <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
   <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
<!-- ... -->
   <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
       10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
 </div>
 <div type="advert">
  <head>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible
and Sun in St.
     Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
   <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c. 2s.
       6d</item>
   <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
<!-- ... -->
  </list>
 </div>
</back>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
```

```
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element back
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         model.frontPart       | model.pLike.front       | model.pLike       | model.list
      (
         (
            model.div1Like,
            ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
         )
       | ( model.divLike, ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )* )
      )?,
      ( ( model.divBottomPart, ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
   )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility

        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.canonical
    - *@ref*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.docStatus
    - *@status*
- att.sortable
    - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by

core: add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice corr date del editor email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure

gaiji: g

header: availability distributor edition extent idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst supplied

character data

Note Contains *phrase-level* elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class

Example

```
<epigraph>
 <bibl>Deut. Chap. 5.</bibl>
 <q>11 Thou ſhalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vaine, for the
Lord
   will not hold him guiltleſſe which ſhall take his name in vaine.</q>
</epigraph>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:bibl"> <sch:assert test="child::* or child::text()[normalize-space()]" role="ERROR">Element "<sch:name/>" may not be empty. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:bibl"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.highlighted    | model.pPart.data    | model.pPart.edit    |
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="parent::listBibl"
 behaviour="listItem"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<biblFull>

(fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2. The File Description 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.docStatus
  - *@status*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

header: editionStmt extent fileDesc notesStmt profileDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
 <biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>Buxom Joan of Lymas's love to a jolly sailer: or, The maiden's
       choice: being love for love again. To an excellent new play-house
       tune.</title>
   <author>Congreve, William, 1670-1729.</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <extent>1 sheet ([1] p.) : music. </extent>
  <publicationStmt>
   <publisher>printed for P[hilip]. Brooksby, at the Golden-ball, in
       Pye-corner.,</publisher>
   <pubPlace>London: :</pubPlace>
   <date>[between 1693-1695]</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <notesStmt>
   <note>Attributed to William Congreve by Wing.</note>
   <note>Date of publication and publisher's name from Wing.</note>
   <note>Verse: "A soldier and a sailer ..."</note>
   <note>Printed in two columns.</note>
   <note>Reproduction of original in the British Library.</note>
  </notesStmt>
 </biblFull>
</sourceDesc>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:biblFull"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="editionStmt"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="notesStmt"
     minOccurs="0"/>
   </sequence>
   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
   <elementRef key="profileDesc"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblFull
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      (
         (
            titleStmt,
            editionStmt?,
            extent?,
            publicationStmt,
            seriesStmt*,
            notesStmt?
         ),
         sourceDesc*
      )
    | ( fileDesc, profileDesc )
   )
}
```

<biblScope>

(scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.citing
  - *@unit*
  - *@from*

– *@to*

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by

core: bibl

header: seriesStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute may be used without *to*; for example a citation such as p. 3ff might be encoded `<biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>`.

It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of `<imprint>`, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.

Example

```
<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.citing.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by *textstructure:* floatingText text

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<body>
 <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
 <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
 <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
 <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
 <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
 <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
 <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
 <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
```

```
      <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
      <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
    </body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
```

```
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element body
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )? ),
      ( ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )? ),
      (
         ( ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
       | ( ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
       | (
            ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
            (
               ( ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
             | ( ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+ )
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<modelSequence>
<model behaviour="index">
 <param name="type" value="'toc'"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"/>
</modelSequence>
```

<byline> (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.5. Front Matter]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: docAuthor

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

Example

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element byline
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<c>

(character) represents a character. [18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

    - *@xml:lang*
    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.analytic
      * *@ana*
    - att.global.facs
      * *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
      * *@corresp*
      * *@next*
      * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
      * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
      * *@cert*
      * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
      * *@source*
  - att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
  - att.notated
    - *@notation*
  - att.segLike
    - *@function*
    - att.fragmentable
      * *@part*
    - att.metrical
      * *@rhyme*
  - att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

Example

```
<phr>
 <c>M</c>
 <c>O</c>
 <c>A</c>
 <c>I</c>
 <w>doth</w>
 <w>sway</w>
 <w>my</w>
 <w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element c
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.xtext}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<castGroup>

(cast list grouping) groups one or more individual <castItem> elements within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*

- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Contained by: *drama:* castGroup castList

May contain

core: cb gap head lb milestone note pb

drama: castGroup castItem roleDesc

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: trailer

transcr: fw

Note The *rend* attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc.

Note that in this example the role description friends of Mathias is understood to apply to both roles equally.

Example

```
<castGroup rend="braced">
 <castItem>
  <role>Walter</role>
  <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
 </castItem>
 <castItem>
  <role>Hans</role>
  <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
 </castItem>
 <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="castItem"/>
    <elementRef key="castGroup"/>
    <elementRef key="roleDesc"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="trailer"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
```

```
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element castGroup
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
      ( ( ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+ ),
      ( ( trailer, model.global* )? )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list">
<desc>Insert list. </desc>
</model>
```

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` characterizes the cast item.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **role** the item describes a single role.[Default]

list the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.

Contained by drama: castGroup castList

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

drama: actor role roleDesc

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<castItem>
 <role>Player</role>
 <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

Example

```
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.castItemPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element castItem
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "role" | "list" }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="listItem">
<desc>Insert item, rendered as described in parent list rendition. </desc>
</model>
```

<castList>

(cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. [7.1.4. Cast Lists 7.1. Front and Back Matter]

Module drama

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.frontPart.drama model.inter

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castGroup castItem castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener salute signed

transcr: fw

Example

```
<castList>
 <castGroup>
  <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
  <castItem>
   <role>Aafaa</role>
   <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Blindman</role>
   <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Goyi</role>
   <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Cripple</role>
   <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
  </castItem>
 </castGroup>
 <castItem>
  <role>Si Bero</role>
  <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
  <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
 </castItem>
 <castGroup>
  <head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
  <castItem>
   <role>Iya Agba</role>
   <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
   <role>Iya Mate</role>
   <actor>Bopo George</actor>
  </castItem>
 </castGroup>
 <castItem>
  <role>Dr Bero</role>
  <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
  <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
 </castItem>
 <castItem>
  <role>Priest</role>
```

```
      <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
     </castItem>
     <castItem>
      <role>The old man</role>
      <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
      <actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
     </castItem>
    </castList>
    <stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of
    Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="castItem"/>
    <elementRef key="castGroup"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element castList
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( ( model.common, model.global* )* ),
      ( ( ( castItem | castGroup ), model.global* )+ ),
      ( ( model.common, model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list"
 useSourceRendition="true">
```

```
<outputRendition>list-style: ordered;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal `<textDesc>`. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*

Contained by: *header:* category

May contain

core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign hi measure name num q ref rs term time title

header: idno

tagdocs: code

transcr: subst

character data

Example

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

Example

```
<catDesc>
 <textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
 </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element catDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart )*
}
```

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*

    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*

`@scheme` identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain Empty element
Note The *scheme* attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.
Example

```
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
 target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
 <category xml:id="news">
  <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="prov">
  <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="sales2">
  <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
 </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`
Schema Declaration

```
element catRef
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   empty
}
```

<category> (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: *header:* category taxonomy

May contain

core: desc

header: catDesc category

Example

```
<category xml:id="b1">
 <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b2">
 <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
 <category xml:id="b11">
  <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="b12">
  <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
 </category>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="LIT">
 <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
 <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
 <category xml:id="LPROSE">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
 </category>
</category>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate>
   <elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
    <elementRef key="equiv"/>
    <elementRef key="gloss"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element category
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | equiv | gloss )* ), category* )
}
```

<cb>

(column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic

        - *@ana*
    - att.global.facs
        - *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
        - *@corresp*
        - *@next*
        - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        - *@cert*
        - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.breaking
    - *@break*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.edition
    - *@ed*
    - *@edRef*
- att.spanning
    - *@spanTo*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column beginnings relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
   sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
   or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
   containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
 <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
   Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element cb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="break">
<param name="type" value="'column'"/>
<param name="label" value="@n"/>
</model>
```

<cell> (cell) contains one cell of a table. [15.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.tableDecoration
  - ~~role~~
  - @rows
  - @cols

@role (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Derived from att.tableDecoration

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **data** data cell[Default]

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

Contained by: *figure* row

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<row>
 <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
 <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
   and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cell
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
   attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="cell">
<desc>Insert table cell. </desc>
</model>
```

<change>

(change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 12.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*

        - *@next*
        - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        - *@cert*
        - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.ascribed
    - *@who*
- att.datable
    - *@period*
    - att.datable.w3c
        - *@when*
        - *@notBefore*
        - *@notAfter*
        - *@from*
        - *@to*
- att.docStatus
    - *@status*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

`@target` (target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Contained by: listChange revisionDesc
May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: ab anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.

It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

Example

```
<titleStmt>
 <title> ... </title>
 <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
 <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
  <resp>copy editing</resp>
  <name>Brett Zamir</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02"
  status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02"
  status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
 <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
  who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <listChange>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT2"
    notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly
       using green ink</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT3"
    notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as
       supplied to printer.</change>
  </listChange>
 </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element change
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
```

```
attribute target { list { + } }?,
macro.specialPara}
```

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: *gaiji:* charDecl

May contain

core: desc graphic note

figures: figure formula

gaiji: localProp mapping unicodeProp unihanProp

Example

```
<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
 <localProp name="Name"
  value="CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA"/>
 <localProp name="daikanwa" value="36"/>
 <unicodeProp name="Decomposition_Mapping"
  value="circle"/>
 <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="unicodeProp"/>
  <elementRef key="unihanProp"/>
  <elementRef key="localProp"/>
  <elementRef key="mapping"/>
  <elementRef key="figure"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element char
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      unicodeProp    | unihanProp    | localProp    | mapping    | figure    | model.grap
}
```

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: desc

gaiji: char glyph

Example

```
<charDecl>
 <char xml:id="aENL">
  <unicodeProp name="Name"
   value="LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A"/>
  <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
 </char>
</charDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="char"/>
   <elementRef key="glyph"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element charDecl { att.global.attributes, ( desc?, ( char | glyph )+ ) }
```

<choice>

(choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*

  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

linking: seg

transcr: supplied

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.

Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the `<app>` element and associated elements discussed in section 13.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
 </choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
 </choice>.</p>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:choice"> <sch:assert test="(tei:corr and tei:sic) or (tei:expan and tei:abbr) or (tei:reg and tei:orig)" role="ERROR"> Element "<sch:name/>" must have corresponding corr/sic, expand/abbr, reg/orig </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="2"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
  <elementRef key="choice"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element choice
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   ( model.choicePart | choice ),
   ( model.choicePart | choice ),
   ( model.choicePart | choice )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model output="plain"
 predicate="sic and corr" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="corr[1]"/>
</model>
<model output="plain"
 predicate="abbr and expan" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="expan[1]"/>
</model>
<model output="plain"
 predicate="orig and reg" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="reg[1]"/>
</model>
<model predicate="sic and corr"
 behaviour="alternate">
<param name="default" value="corr[1]"/>
<param name="alternate" value="sic[1]"/>
</model>
<model predicate="abbr and expan"
 behaviour="alternate">
<param name="default" value="expan[1]"/>
<param name="alternate" value="abbr[1]"/>
</model>
<model predicate="orig and reg"
 behaviour="alternate">
<param name="default" value="reg[1]"/>
<param name="alternate" value="orig[1]"/>
</model>
```

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text

with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 10.3.5.1. Examples]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear

drama: actor castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: pc

core: bibl cb cit gap graphic lb listBibl milestone note pb q quote ref

figures: figure formula

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Example

```
<cit>
 <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
   as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
 <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
 <form>
  <orth>horrifier</orth>
 </form>
 <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
  <quote>to horrify</quote>
 </cit>
 <cit type="example">
  <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
   <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
  </cit>
 </cit>
</entry>
```

Example

```
<cit type="example">
 <quote xml:lang="mix">Ka'an yu tsa'a Pedro.</quote>
 <media url="soundfiles-gen:S_speak_1s_on_behalf_of_Pedro_01_02_03_TS.wav"
  mimeType="audio/wav"/>
 <cit type="translation">
  <quote xml:lang="en">I'm speaking on behalf of Pedro.</quote>
 </cit>
 <cit type="translation">
  <quote xml:lang="es">Estoy hablando de parte de Pedro.</quote>
 </cit>
</cit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.egLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <elementRef key="q"/>
```

```
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cit
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.biblLike    | model.egLike    | model.entryPart    | model.global    | model.
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="child::quote and child::bibl"
 behaviour="cit">
<desc>Insert citation </desc>
</model>
```

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

`@scheme` identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain
core: abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num pb q ref rs term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: code
transcr: fw subst
character data
Example

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element classCode
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text },
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<classDecl>

(classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*

    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Example

```
<classDecl>
 <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
  <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
 </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
 <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
  <term>Political science</term>
  <term>United States -- Politics and government --
     Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

<closer>

(closer) groups together salutations, datelines, bylines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*

- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: byline dateline salute signed

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<div type="letter">
 <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
 <closer>
  <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
  <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
 </closer>
</div>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
 <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
 <closer>
  <dateline>
   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
   <date>1914–1921</date>
  </dateline>
 </closer>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="byline"/>
  <elementRef key="signed"/>
  <elementRef key="dateline"/>
  <elementRef key="salute"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element closer
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | byline    | signed    | dateline    | salute    | model.phrase
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-top: 1em; margin-left: 1em; margin-left:
 1em;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language. [23.1.1. Phrase Level Terms]

Module tagdocs

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

`@lang` (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.word

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Example

```
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { text }?, text }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-family:monospace</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.editLike
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <corr>can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —
how <choice>
 <sic>we can</sic>
 <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element corr
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
```

```
att.editLike.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="parent::choice and count(parent::*/*) gt 1"
 behaviour="inline">
<desc>simple inline, if in parent choice. </desc>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: ']';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile Description]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*

* *@to*

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign hi measure name num q ref rs term time title

header: idno listChange

tagdocs: code

transcr: subst

character data

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.

It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

Example

```
<creation>
 <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example

```
<creation>
 <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <elementRef key="listChange"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element creation
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange )*
}
```

<date>

(date) contains a date in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 16.2.3. The Setting Description 14.4. Dates]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.calendarSystem
  - *@calendar*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.editLike
- att.typed

- *@type*
- *@subtype*

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence publicationStmt rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

Example

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven
of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

Example

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
```

```
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element date
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.calendarSystem.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model output="print" predicate="text()"
 behaviour="inline"/>
<model output="print"
 predicate="@when and not(text())" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="@when"/>
</model>
<model output="web" predicate="@when"
 behaviour="alternate">
<param name="default" value="."/>
<param name="alternate" value="@when"/>
</model>
<model predicate="text()" behaviour="inline"/>
```

<dateline>

(dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*

        - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        - *@cert*
        - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
    - *@hand*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div front group opener

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: docDate

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
 <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
 <closer>
  <dateline>
   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
   <date>1914–1921</date>
  </dateline>
 </closer>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element dateline
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate )*
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<del>

(deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.transcriptional
  - *@status*
  - *@cause*
  - *@seq*
  - att.editLike
  - att.placement
    - *@place*
  - att.written
    - *@hand*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 22. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and `<surplus>` on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 12.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example

```
<l>
 <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
<del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
weht der Wind
</l>
```

Example

```
<del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
  unit="character"/>
</del>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element del
{
```

```
att.global.attributes,
att.cmc.attributes,
att.dimensions.attributes,
att.transcriptional.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition> text-decoration: line-through;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<desc> (description) contains a short description of the purpose, function, or use of its parent element, or when the parent is a documentation element, describes or defines the object being documented. [23.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **deprecationInfo** (deprecation information)
This element describes why or how its parent element is being deprecated, typically including recommendations for alternate encoding.

```
<dataSpec module="tei"
 ident="teidata.point"
 validUntil="2050-02-25">
 <desc type="deprecationInfo"
  versionDate="2018-09-14"
  xml:lang="en">Several standards bodies, including NIST in
the USA,
   strongly recommend against ending the representation of a
number
   with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either
<q>3</q>
   or <q>3.0</q>.</desc>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

Member of model.descLike model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc gap graphic head hi item l lg list listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

gaiji: char charDecl glyph

header: category change licence listChange listPrefixDef rendition tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied surface

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: castList

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: subst

character data

Note When used in a specification element such as `<elementSpec>`, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb.

Example Example of a <desc> element inside a documentation element.

```
<dataSpec module="tei"
 ident="teidata.point">
 <desc versionDate="2010-10-17"
  xml:lang="en">defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian
space.</desc>
 <content>
  <dataRef name="token"
   restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>
 </content>
<!-- ... -->
</dataSpec>
```

Example Example of a <desc> element in a non-documentation element.

```
<place xml:id="KERG2">
 <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
<!-- ... -->
 <terrain>
  <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
 </terrain>
<!-- ... -->
</place>
```

Schematron A <desc> with a *type* of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element.
<sch:rule context="tei:desc[@type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> <sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element desc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "deprecationInfo" }?,
   macro.limitedContent}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<distributor>

(distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*

- *@n*
- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

- att.canonical
  - *@ref*

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element distributor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.divLike
  - *@org*
  - *@sample*
  - att.fragmentable
    - *@part*
  - att.metrical
    - *@rhyme*
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.typed

  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<body>
 <div type="part">
  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
     exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
   <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
   <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
       happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
   <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to
be attached to
         authority [...] </p>
   </div>
   <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...]
</p>
   </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</body>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:div"> <sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText"> Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:div"> <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, unless div is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="1">
       <elementRef key="schemaSpec"/>
       <classRef key="model.common"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="1">
       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element div
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.divLike.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
```

```
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            (
               ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
             | (
                  ( ( ( schemaSpec | model.common ), model.global* )+ ),
                  ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )* )
               )
            ),
            ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
         )?
      )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@type='title_page'"
 behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="section"
 predicate="parent::body or parent::front or parent::back"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source

        * *@source*

- att.canonical
    - *@ref*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.)

Example

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
     Parts.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
   and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<docDate>

(document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.calendarSystem
  - *@calendar*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*

* *@to*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docDate
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.calendarSystem.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<docEdition>

(document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: docDate

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Cf. the `<imprint>` element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
 <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
 <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  <elementRef key="publisher"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
```

```
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | pubPlace    | docDate    | publisher    | model.
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

core: cb gap lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: titlePart

transcr: fw

Example

```
<docTitle>
 <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
 <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( ( titlePart, model.global* )+ ) )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>font-size: larger;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<edition>

(edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*

- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<editionStmt>

(edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*

- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Contained by: *header:* biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor p respStmt

header: edition

linking: ab

Example

```
<editionStmt>
 <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>Adapted by </resp>
  <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
 </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>
 <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
 </p>
</editionStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence>
   <elementRef key="edition"/>
   <classRef key="model.respLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editionStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}
```

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical

* *@ref*

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note A consistent format should be adopted.

Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

```
<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
 behaviour="omit"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<encodingDesc>
 <editorialDecl>
  <p>EEBO-TCP is a partnership between the Universities of Michigan and
Oxford
     and the publisher ProQuest to create accurately transcribed and
encoded
     texts based on the image sets published by ProQuest via their Early
English
     Books Online (EEBO) database (http://eebo.chadwyck.com). The general
aim of
     EEBO-TCP is to encode one copy (usually the first edition) of every
     monographic English-language title published between 1473 and 1700
available
     in EEBO.</p>
  <p>EEBO-TCP aimed to produce large quantities of textual data within the
usual
     project restraints of time and funding, and therefore chose to create
```

```
      diplomatic transcriptions (as opposed to critical editions) with
      light-touch, mainly structural encoding based on the Text Encoding
      Initiative (http://www.tei-c.org).</p>
  <p>The EEBO-TCP project was divided into two phases. The 25,363 texts
created
      during Phase 1 of the project have been released into the public
domain as
      of 1 January 2015. Anyone can now take and use these texts for their
own
      purposes, but we respectfully request that due credit and attribution
is
      given to their original source.</p>
  <p>Users should be aware of the process of creating the TCP texts, and
      therefore of any assumptions that can be made about the data.</p>
  <p>Text selection was based on the New Cambridge Bibliography of English
      Literature (NCBEL). If an author (or for an anonymous work, the
title)
      appears in NCBEL, then their works are eligible for inclusion.
Selection was
      intended to range over a wide variety of subject areas, to reflect
the true
      nature of the print record of the period. In general, first editions
of a
      works in English were prioritized, although there are a number of
works in
      other languages, notably Latin and Welsh, included and sometimes a
second or
      later edition of a work was chosen if there was a compelling reason
to do
      so.</p>
  <p>Image sets were sent to external keying companies for transcription
and
      basic encoding. Quality assurance was then carried out by editorial
teams in
      Oxford and Michigan. 5% (or 5 pages, whichever is the greater) of
each text
      was proofread for accuracy and those which did not meet QA standards
were
      returned to the keyers to be redone. After proofreading, the encoding
was
      enhanced and/or corrected and characters marked as illegible were
corrected
      where possible up to a limit of 100 instances per text. Any remaining
      illegibles were encoded as <gap>s. Understanding these processes
      should make clear that, while the overall quality of TCP data is very
good,
      some errors will remain and some readable characters will be marked
as
      illegible. Users should bear in mind that in all likelihood such
instances
      will never have been looked at by a TCP editor.</p>
  <p>The texts were encoded and linked to page images in accordance with
level 4
      of the TEI in Libraries guidelines.</p>
  <p>Copies of the texts have been issued variously as SGML (TCP schema;
ASCII
      text with mnemonic sdata character entities); displayable XML (TCP
schema;
      characters represented either as UTF-8 Unicode or text strings within
      braces); or lossless XML (TEI P5, characters represented either as
UTF-8
```

```
        Unicode or TEI g elements).</p>
      <p>Keying and markup guidelines are available at the
    <ref target="http://www.textcreationpartnership.org/docs/.">Text Creation
           Partnership web site</ref>.</p>
     </editorialDecl>
    </encodingDesc>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:editorialDecl"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

<email>

(electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.6.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*

- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

Example

```
<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element email { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-family:monospace</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: p

gaiji: charDecl

header: classDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl

linking: ab

Example

```
<encodingDesc>
 <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
   hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
   formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="omit"/>`

<epigraph> (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Example

```
<epigraph>
 <bibl>Deut. Chap. 5.</bibl>
 <q>11 Thou ſhalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vaine, for the
Lord
   will not hold him guiltleſſe which ſhall take his name in vaine.</q>
</epigraph>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element epigraph
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   ( model.common | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<expan>

(expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

    - *@xml:base*
    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.analytic
      - *@ana*
    - att.global.facs
      - *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
      - *@corresp*
      - *@next*
      - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
      - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
      - *@cert*
      - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
      - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.editLike

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The `<ex>` element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the <editorialDecl>, either with a `<normalization>` element or a <p>.

Example

```
The address is Southmoor
<choice>
 <expan>Road</expan>
 <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice xml:lang="la">
 <abbr>Imp</abbr>
 <expan>Imp<ex>erator</ex>
 </expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element expan
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<extent>

(extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 11.7.1. Object Description]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*

- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

Example The <measure> element may be used to supply normalized or machine tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

```
<extent>
 <measure unit="MiB" quantity="4.2">About four megabytes</measure>
 <measure unit="pages" quantity="245">245 pages of source
   material</measure>
</extent>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [12.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transcr

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.resource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

transcr: facsimile

May contain

core: graphic

figures: formula

textstructure: back front

transcr: facsimile surface

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <graphic url="page1.png"/>
 <surface>
  <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
 </surface>
 <graphic url="page3.png"/>
 <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:facsimile//tei:line | tei:facsimile//tei:zone"> <sch:report test="child::text()[normalize-space(.) ne]"> A facsimile element represents a text with images, thus transcribed text should not be present within it. </sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
   </alternate>
   <elementRef key="facsimile"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element facsimile
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      front?,
      ( ( model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+ | facsimile+ ),
      back?
   )
}
```

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [15.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: figure

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: castList

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: subst

character data

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

Example

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
 <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
 <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
   flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: '..]';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition>color: grey;font-style:italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [15.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
  - *@place*

- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap graphic head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figDesc figure formula table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<figure>
 <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
   series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
 <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"
  scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
```

```
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figure
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike    | model.common    | figDesc    | model.graphicLike    | model.glo
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="head or @rendition='simple:display'"
 behaviour="block"/>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition> display: block; border-top: solid 1pt blue; border-bottom: solid
 1pt blue; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*

- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Contained by: *header:* biblFull teiHeader

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example

```
<fileDesc>
 <titleStmt>
  <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
 </titleStmt>
 <publicationStmt>
  <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
 </publicationStmt>
 <sourceDesc>
  <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
 </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="editionStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <elementRef key="notesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         titleStmt,
```

```
         editionStmt?,
         extent?,
         publicationStmt,
         seriesStmt*,
         notesStmt?
      ),
      sourceDesc+
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="title">
<param name="content" value="titleStmt"/>
</model>
```

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.attributable

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear

drama: actor castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: fw

Note A floating text has the same content as any other <text> and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a <group> of tesselated texts.

Example

```
<body>
 <div type="scene">
  <sp>
   <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
  </sp>
  <floatingText type="pwp">
   <body>
    <div type="act">
     <sp>
      <l>In Athens our tale takes place [...]</l>
     </sp>
<!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
    </div>
   </body>
  </floatingText>
  <sp>
   <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
  </sp>
 </div>
</body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="back"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element floatingText
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( ( front, model.global* )? ),
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( ( back, model.global* )? )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition> margin: 6pt; border: solid black 1pt; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking

        - *@corresp*
        - *@next*
        - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        - *@cert*
        - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in

preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The `<distinct>` element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

Example

```
This is
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-style:italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<formula>

(formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [15.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]

Module figures

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*

- att.global.source
  - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

`@notation` names the notation used for the content of the element.

Derived from att.notated

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **TeX** Using TeX or LaTeX notation

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: facsimile fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: graphic hi q

figures: formula

character data

Example

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi>
</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="mathml">
 <m:math>
  <m:mi>E</m:mi>
  <m:mo>=</m:mo>
  <m:mi>m</m:mi>
  <m:msup>
   <m:mrow>
    <m:mi>c</m:mi>
   </m:mrow>
   <m:mrow>
    <m:mn>2</m:mn>
   </m:mrow>
```

```
      </m:msup>
     </m:math>
    </formula>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element formula
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   attribute notation { "TeX" }?,
   ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@rendition='simple:display'"
 behaviour="block"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*

- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Contained by: *textstructure:* floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

core: cb gap head lb listBibl milestone note p pb

drama: castList set

figures: figure

linking: ab anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the <front> and <back> elements are identical.

Example

```
<front>
 <epigraph>
  <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla
     pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="grc">Σίβυλλα τί
       θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="grc">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
  </quote>
 </epigraph>
 <div type="dedication">
  <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
  </p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front>
 <div type="dedication">
  <p>To our three selves</p>
 </div>
 <div type="preface">
  <head>Author's Note</head>
  <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
     author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
     she has done so inadvertently. ...</p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front>
 <div type="abstract">
  <div>
```

```
      <head> BACKGROUND:</head>
      <p>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because
          of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head> OBJECTIVE:</head>
      <p>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level
          food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head> DESIGN:</head>
      <p>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition
          Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.
          Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of
          Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight
          child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed
with
          five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical
          measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m2) greater than
          or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the
Centers
          for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic
          regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and
          survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity
          and food insecurity.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head> RESULTS:</head>
      <p>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity
          for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to
          2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95%
          CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated
          with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head> CONCLUSIONS:</head>
      <p>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of
          obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal
          food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate
          food-insecurity measures in children.</p>
    </div>
  </div>
</front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
```

```
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
     </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
     </alternate>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element front
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            (
               (
                  model.div1Like,
                  ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )*
               )
             | (
                  model.divLike,
                  ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )*
               )
            ),
            ( ( model.divBottom, ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )? )
         )?
      )
   )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<fw>

(forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [12.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

Module transcr

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*

  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    * *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.written
  - *@hand*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **header** a running title at the top of the page

footer a running title at the bottom of the page

pageNum (page number) a page number or foliation symbol

lineNum (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

sig (signature) a signature or gathering symbol

catch (catchword) a catch-word

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *rend* attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.

Example

```
<fw type="sig" place="bottom">C3</fw>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fw
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::p or ancestor::ab"
 behaviour="inline"/>
```

```
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes]

Module gaiji

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

`@ref` points to a description of the character or glyph intended.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

gaiji: mapping

header: change distributor edition extent idno licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Note The name `g` is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

Example

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier `ctlig` like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>
```

Example

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier `per-glyph` as follows:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element g
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute ref { text }?,
   text
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="not(text())"
 behaviour="glyph">
<param name="uri" value="@ref"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<gap>

(gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.editLike
- att.timed
  - *@start*
  - *@end*

`@reason` (reason) gives the reason for omission.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **cancelled** (cancelled)

deleted (deleted)

editorial (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy

illegible (illegible)

inaudible (inaudible)

irrelevant (irrelevant)

sampling (sampling)

`@agent` (agent) in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **rubbing** (rubbing) damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew (mildew) damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke (smoke) damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the `<damage>` and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"
 reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"
 reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
 <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"
```

```
      reason="illegible"/>
    </del>
```

Example

```
    <gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="1"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gap
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.timed.attributes,
   attribute reason
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "cancelled"
          | "deleted"
          | "editorial"
          | "illegible"
          | "inaudible"
          | "irrelevant"
          | "sampling"
         )+
      }
   }?,
   attribute agent { text }?,
   desc?
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="desc" behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>color: grey;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@extent"
 behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="@extent"/>
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: '..]';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition>color: grey;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[...]';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.
[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: *gaiji:* charDecl

May contain

core: desc graphic note

figures: figure formula

gaiji: localProp mapping unicodeProp unihanProp

Example

```
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
 <localProp name="Name"
  value="LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE"/>
 <localProp name="entity" value="rstroke"/>
 <figure>
  <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
 </figure>
</glyph>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="unicodeProp"/>
  <elementRef key="unihanProp"/>
  <elementRef key="localProp"/>
  <elementRef key="mapping"/>
  <elementRef key="figure"/>
```

```
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element glyph
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      unicodeProp    | unihanProp    | localProp    | mapping    | figure    | model.grap
}
```

<graphic>

(graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 12.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.media
  - *@width*
  - *@height*
  - *@scale*

  - att.internetMedia
    * *@mimeType*
- att.resourced
  - *@url*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: facsimile fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc

Note The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute.

Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or `<sourceDoc>` element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
 <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
   series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
   <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
  </surface>
```

```
  </surfaceGrp>
 </facsimile>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surfaceGrp n="leaf1" xml:id="spi001">
  <surface xml:id="spi001r">
   <graphic type="normal"
    subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001r.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res"
    url="spi/normal/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="normal"
    subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="high-contrast"
    subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001r.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="high-contrast"
    subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001r.jpg"/>
  </surface>
  <surface xml:id="spi001v">
   <graphic type="normal"
    subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="normal" subtype="low-res"
    url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="normal"
    subtype="high-res" url="spi/normal/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="high-contrast"
    subtype="low-res" url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v.jpg"/>
   <graphic type="high-contrast"
    subtype="high-res" url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v.jpg"/>
   <zone xml:id="spi001v_detail01">
    <graphic type="normal"
     subtype="thumbnail" url="spi/thumb/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic type="normal"
     subtype="low-res"
     url="spi/normal/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic type="normal"
     subtype="high-res"
     url="spi/normal/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic type="high-contrast"
     subtype="low-res"
     url="spi/contrast/lowRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
    <graphic type="high-contrast"
     subtype="high-res"
     url="spi/contrast/highRes/001v-detail01.jpg"/>
   </zone>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.descLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element graphic
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.media.attributes,
   att.resourced.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   model.descLike*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="graphic">
<param name="url" value="@url"/>
<param name="width" value="@width"/>
<param name="height" value="@height"/>
<param name="scale" value="@scale"/>
<param name="title" value="desc"/>
</model>
```

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Contained by
textstructure: floatingText group text
May contain
core: cb gap head lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener postscript salute signed text trailer
transcr: fw
Example

```
<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
 <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first poem -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second poem -->
  </text>
 </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="text"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="text"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element group
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
```

```
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
      model.divBottom*
   )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: lg list listBibl

drama: castGroup castList set

figures: figure table

namesdates: listPerson listPlace place

textstructure: argument back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div1>` is the title of that chapter or section.

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
 <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
   Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
 <div2 type="section">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
  <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
  <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
     years passed.</p>
  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
     years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
 </div2>
</div1>
```

Example When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the *place* attribute.

```
<div type="subsection">
 <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
 <p>
  <lb n="1251"/>
  <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab
obiectis<supplied>.</supplied>
  </hi>
  <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad
proprium
   [...]
 </p>
</div>
```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list rend="bulleted">
 <head>Connectives</head>
 <item>above</item>
 <item>accordingly</item>
 <item>across from</item>
 <item>adjacent to</item>
 <item>again</item>
 <item>
<!-- ... -->
 </item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element head
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | lg    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.lLike    | model.
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="parent::figure"
 behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::table"
 behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::lg"
 behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::list"
 behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-weight: bold;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::div"
 behaviour="heading">
<param name="level"
 value="count(ancestor::div)"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc formula

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element hi
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@rendition"
 behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="not(@rendition)"
 behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [14.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

ISSN International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

DOI Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

URI Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource, following the syntax of RFC 3986.

VIAF A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

ESTC English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

OCLC OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.

Member of model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent idno language licence publicationStmt rendition seriesStmt tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

header: idno

character data

Note <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
 <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as `#sym`.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="idno"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element idno
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
   }?,
```

```
   ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

<imprimatur>

(imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<item>

(item) contains one component of a list. [3.8. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

Contained by *May contain* list

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not *n*.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
 <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
 <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
 <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
 <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
 <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
 <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
 <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
 <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element item
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="listItem"/>`

<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

`@scheme` identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass

May contain

core: list term

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.

If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme* attribute.

Example

```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
 <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
 <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

Example

```
<keywords>
 <term>Fermented beverages</term>
 <term>Central Andes</term>
 <term>Schinus molle</term>
 <term>Molle beer</term>
 <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
 <term>Ethnography</term>
 <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="list"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element keywords
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   ( term+ | list )
}
```

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*

        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.fragmentable
    - *@part*
- att.metrical
    - *@rhyme*

Member of model.lLike

Contained by

core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: change licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<argument>
 <l>With ſighs and tears her love he doth deſire,</l>
 <l>Since Cupid hath his ſenſes ſet on fire;</l>
 <l>His torment and his pain to her he ſhews,</l>
 <l>With all his proteſtations and his vows:</l>
 <l>At laſt ſhe yields to grant him ſome relief,</l>
 <l>And make him joyful after all his grief.</l>
</argument>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:l">
<sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements.</sch:report>
</sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element l
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.fragmentable.attributes,
   att.metrical.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition> margin-left: 1em; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<label>

(label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*

        * *@next*
        * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
    - *@place*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*
- att.written
    - *@hand*

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg list note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied surface

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
 <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
 <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
 <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
 <label>nu</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
 <label>lhude</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
 <label>bloweth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
 <label>med</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
 <label>wude</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
 <label>awe</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
 <label>lhouth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
 <label>sterteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
   <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
   <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
 </item>
 <label>verteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
 <label>murie</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
 <label>swik</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
 <label>naver</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
 <label>(1)</label>
 <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
 <label>(2) </label>
 <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
   printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
 <label>March 1757.</label>
 <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
 <label>March 8th.</label>
```

```
 <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
 <label>June.</label>
 <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit
amor, et nos cedamus
     amori.</quote>
 </item>
 <label>August.</label>
 <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
<lb/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente-
<lb/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt
<lb/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit
<label place="margin">Puiſſance maritale
   entre les Romains.</label>
 <lb/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma-
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs
<lb/> la puiſſance du mary, s'il n'eſt eſcla-
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en-
<lb/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance
[...]</p>
```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element label
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

header: language

linking: ab

Example

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
 <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
 <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:langUsage"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element langUsage { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike+ | language+ ) }
```

<language> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.scope
  - *@scope*

`@ident` (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which may be referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.
Status Required
Datatype teidata.language

`@usage` specifies the approximate percentage of the text which uses this language.
Status Optional
Datatype nonNegativeInteger

Contained by: langUsage
May contain

core: abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num pb q ref rs term time title

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst

character data

Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

Example

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
 <language ident="az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic
script</language>
 <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element language
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.scope.attributes,
   attribute ident { text },
   attribute usage { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<lb>

(line beginning) marks the beginning of a topographic line in some edition or version of a text. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking

        * *@corresp*
        * *@next*
        * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.breaking
    - *@break*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.edition
    - *@ed*
    - *@edRef*
- att.spanning
    - *@spanTo*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking the beginning of each new topographic line on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where it occurs; it should not be used to

tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line beginning in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the beginning of the new topographic line is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example This example shows the encoding of the beginning of each new topographic line within a metrical line, indicating where it occurs in both the 1667 and 1674 editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example This example shows the encoding of the beginning of a new topographical line as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the beginning of the new line does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart>
 <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element lb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="break"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<param name="type" value="'line'"/>
<param name="label" value="@n"/>
</model>
```

<lg>

(line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.divLike
  - *@org*
  - *@sample*
  - att.fragmentable
    - *@part*
  - att.metrical
    - *@rhyme*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.divPart model.paraPart

Contained by

core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: change licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: add cb corr del desc gap head l label lb lg milestone note orig pb reg sic stage unclear

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw supplied

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

Example

```
<lg type="free">
 <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
 <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
 <l>is equivocal.</l>
 <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
 <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
 <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:lg">
<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg, or gap element.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:lg">
<sch:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
   <elementRef key="lg"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <elementRef key="lg"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element lg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.divLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         model.lLike       | model.stageLike       | model.labelLike       | model.pPart.
      (
         model.lLike       | model.stageLike       | model.labelLike       | model.pPart.
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable
  - *@period*

  - att.datable.w3c
    * *@when*
    * *@notBefore*
    * *@notAfter*
    * *@from*
    * *@to*

- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by

header: availability

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

Example

```
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing">
Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

Example

```
<availability>
 <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
  notBefore="2013-01-01">
  <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
     applies to this document.</p>
  <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
 </licence>
</availability>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element licence
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **gloss** (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

index (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

instructions (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syllogism (syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change keywords licence rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb desc gap head item label lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
 <item>a butcher</item>
 <item>a baker</item>
 <item>a candlestick maker, with
 <list rend="bulleted">
   <item>rings on his fingers</item>
   <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
 </item>
</list>
```

Example

```
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
 <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
 <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
 <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>
```

Example

```
<list type="litany" rend="simple">
 <item>God save us from drought.</item>
 <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
 <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
 <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
 <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
 <list rend="numbered">
  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who
is caught with
     the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
     eightpence.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
with his
          wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
account – or to
          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
    <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
to escape, he is
          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
    <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
days, and he may
          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
surety for him
          that he will desist for ever.</item>
    <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
          or to bring him back there.</item>
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
```

```
fine.</item>
   </list>
  </item>
  <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him
is to strike him
          down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
          or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
   </list>
  </item>
  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
      his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
      120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
      often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
      refused him justice.
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
          known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
          occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all
that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
          an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to
the same.</item>
   </list>
  </item>
  <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
      a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot
deny it or is
      afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
 </list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross.
```

```
<list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
      Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
      the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
      sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
      sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with thef sign of
      the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the
sign of the Holy
      Cross.</item>
 </list>
</p>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
<sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="item"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="headLabel"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="headItem"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="label"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <elementRef key="item"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
```

```
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element list
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
   }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
      (
         ( ( item, model.global* )+ )
       | (
            headLabel?,
            headItem?,
            ( ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+ )
         )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@rendition"
 behaviour="list" useSourceRendition="true"/>
<model predicate="not(@rendition)"
 behaviour="list"/>
```

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.biblLike model.frontPart

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb desc head lb listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example

```
<listBibl>
 <head>Works consulted</head>
 <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
   Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
 </bibl>
 <biblStruct>
  <analytic>
   <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
   <title>The Penny Histories</title>
   <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
   <imprint>
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>
   </imprint>
  </monogr>
 </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:listBibl"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listBibl
{
   att.global.attributes,
```

```
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*,
      (
         (
            model.biblLike+,
            ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*
         )+
      )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="bibl" behaviour="list"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.6. The Revision Description 12.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

@ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child <change> elements is to be considered significant or not.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue
Default true

Contained by: *core:* desc *header:* creation listChange revisionDesc
May contain
core: desc
header: change listChange
Note When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.
Example

```
<revisionDesc>
 <listChange>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
  <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
 </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <listChange ordered="true">
   <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
   <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using
pencil</change>
   <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further
revisions by
        Goethe using ink</change>
   <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,
        probably at a later stage</change>
  </listChange>
 </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="listChange"/>
   <elementRef key="change"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listChange
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute ordered { text }?,
   ( desc*, ( listChange | change )+ )
}
```

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [14.3.2. The Person Element 16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module namesdates

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

corpus: particDesc

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: listPerson

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc head

namesdates: listPerson person

Note The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

Example

```
<listPerson type="respondents">
 <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
 <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
 <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
 <listRelation>
  <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
   mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
 </listRelation>
</listPerson>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:listPerson"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.personLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPerson"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listPerson
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      ( ( ( model.personLike | listPerson )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+ )
   )
}
```

<listPlace>

(list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 14.3.4. Places]

Module namesdates

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source

        * *@source*

- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

corpus: settingDesc

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: listPlace place

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc head

namesdates: listPlace place

Example

```
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
 <place>
  <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
 </place>
 <place>
  <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
 </place>
</listPlace>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:listPlace"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="1"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.placeLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listPlace"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listPlace
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( relation | listRelation )*,
      ( ( ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+ )
   )
}
```

<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [17.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*

    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc listPrefixDef

May contain

core: desc

header: listPrefixDef prefixDef

Example In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a <p> element.

```
<listPrefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="psn"
  matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
  replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
  <p> Private URIs using the <code>psn</code>
     prefix are pointers to <gi>person</gi>
     elements in the personography.xml file.
     For example, <code>psn:MDH</code>
     dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.
  </p>
 </prefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="bibl"
  matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)"
  replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">
  <p> Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be
     expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant
     bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
  </p>
 </prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="prefixDef"/>
   <elementRef key="listPrefixDef"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listPrefixDef
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( desc*, ( prefixDef | listPrefixDef )+ )
}
```

<localProp> (locally defined property) provides a locally defined character (or glyph) property. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

Module gaiji

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.gaijiProp
  - *@name*
  - *@value*
  - *@version*
  - *@scheme*
  - att.datable
    - *@period*
    - att.datable.w3c
      - *@when*
      - *@notBefore*
      - *@notAfter*
      - *@from*
      - *@to*

Containing *gaiji:* char glyph

May contain Empty element

Note No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

Example

```
<char xml:id="daikanwaU4EBA">
 <localProp name="name"
  value="CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA"/>
 <localProp name="entity" value="daikanwa"/>
 <unicodeProp name="Decomposition_Mapping"
  value="circle"/>
 <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element localProp { att.global.attributes, att.gaijiProp.attributes, empty }
```

<mapping>

(character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the *type* attribute. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.datable

  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    * *@when*
    * *@notBefore*
    * *@notAfter*
    * *@from*
    * *@to*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Contained by: *gaiji:* char glyph
May contain
gaiji: g
character data
Note Suggested values for the *type* attribute include exact for exact equivalences, uppercase for uppercase equivalences, lowercase for lowercase equivalences, and simplified for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph> element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.
Example

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`
Schema Declaration

```
element mapping
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.xtext}
```

<measure>

(measure) contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core
Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*

  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.measurement
  - *@unit*
  - *@unitRef*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@commodity*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example This example references a definition of a measurement unit declared in the TEI header:

```
<measure type="weight">
 <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area" unitRef="#merk">2 <unit>merks</unit> of old
extent</measure>
<!-- In the TEI Header: -->
<encodingDesc>
 <unitDecl>
  <unitDef xml:id="merk" type="area">
   <label>merk</label>
   <placeName ref="#Scotland"/>
   <desc>A merk was an area of land determined variably by its
agricultural
       productivity.</desc>
  </unitDef>
 </unitDecl>
</encodingDesc>
```

Example

```
<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
 commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="12" unit="count"
 commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
 commodity="tulips">a yellow tulip</measure>
```

Example

```
<head>Long papers.</head>
<p>Speakers will be given 30 minutes each: 20 minutes for
presentation, 10 minutes for discussion. Proposals should not
exceed <measure max="500" unit="count"
  commodity="words">500
   words</measure>. This presentation type is suitable for
substantial research, theoretical or critical discussions.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element measure
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.measurement.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<milestone>

(milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.breaking
  - *@break*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.edition

  - *@ed*
  - *@edRef*
- att.milestoneUnit
  - *@unit*
- att.spanning
  - *@spanTo*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element milestone
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<name>

(name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.6.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.editLike
- att.personal
  - *@full*
  - *@sort*
  - att.naming
    - *@role*
    - *@nymRef*

        * att.canonical
          · *@ref*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **person**

forename

surname

personGenName

personRoleName

personAddName

nameLink

org

country

placeGeog

place

Member of model.nameLike.agent model.personPart

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, or `<orgName>`, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element name
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.personal.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "person"
    | "forename"
    | "surname"
    | "personGenName"
    | "personRoleName"
    | "personAddName"
    | "nameLink"
    | "org"
    | "country"
    | "placeGeog"
    | "place"
   }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<namespace>

(namespace) supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

`@name` specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.

Status Required

Datatype 0–1 occurrences of teidata.namespace separated by whitespace

Contained by *header:* tagsDecl

May contain

header: tagUsage

Example

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used only to mark English words
   italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="tagUsage" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element namespace { att.global.attributes, attribute name { ? }, tagUsage+ }
```

<note>

(note) contains a note or annotation. [3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 10.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.anchoring
  - *@anchored*
  - *@targetEnd*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence notesStmt

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

```
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"
 resp="#MDMH">
 <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.

<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
 <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
 <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

Example The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.anchoring.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@place" behaviour="note">
<param name="place" value="@place"/>
<param name="label" value="@n"/>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::div and not(@place)"
 behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-left: 10px;margin-right: 10px;
 font-size:smaller;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="not(@place)"
 behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:" [";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:"] ";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition>font-size:small;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note relatedItem

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

Example

```
<notesStmt>
 <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
 <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.noteLike | relatedItem )+ }
```

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` indicates the type of numeric value.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

`@value` supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype `teidata.numeric`.

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 19. Feature Structures. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

Example

```
<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on
my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
 </num> cm per second.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element num
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
```

```
attribute value { text }?,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<opener> (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

textstructure: body div group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<opener>
 <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```
<opener>
 <dateline>
  <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
  <date>November 11, 1848</date>
 </dateline>
 <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="argument"/>
  <elementRef key="byline"/>
  <elementRef key="dateline"/>
  <elementRef key="epigraph"/>
  <elementRef key="salute"/>
  <elementRef key="signed"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element opener
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | argument    | byline    | dateline    | epigraph
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization 13. Critical Apparatus]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
 </choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
 </choice>
</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element orig { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.fragmentable
  - *@part*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote sp stage

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: abstract availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc langUsage licence prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you
   done?</q>
</p>
<p>
 <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
 <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
 <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q>
</p>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:p"> <sch:report test="(ancestor::tei:ab or ancestor::tei:p) and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item | parent::tei:note | parent::tei:q | parent::tei:quote | parent::tei:remarks | parent::tei:said | parent::tei:sp | parent::tei:stage | parent::tei:cell | parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:l//tei:p">
<sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:floatingText | parent::tei:figure | parent::tei:note"> Abstract model violation: Metrical lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab, unless p is a child of figure or note, or is a descendant of floatingText. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element p
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.fragmentable.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="paragraph"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>text-align: justify;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [16.2. Contextual Information]

Module corpus

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: listPerson person

Example

```
<particDesc>
 <listPerson>
  <person xml:id="Trinder" sex="m">
   <p>
    <name type="surname">Trinder</name>
    <name type="forename">William</name>
    <name type="forename">Martin</name>
   </p>
  </person>
  <person xml:id="Leland" sex="m">
   <p>
    <name type="surname">Leland</name>
    <name type="forename">Thomas</name>
```

```
        </p>
       </person>
      </listPerson>
     </particDesc>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:particDesc"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
   <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element particDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}
```

<pb>

(page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*

  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.breaking
  - *@break*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.edition
  - *@ed*
  - *@edRef*
- att.spanning
  - *@spanTo*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figure table

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note A <pb> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself.

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page beginning in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page beginning is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

Example A page beginning may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute

```
<body>
 <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
the text it contains is encoded here -->
 <p>
<!-- ... -->
 </p>
 <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
 <p>
<!-- ... -->
 </p>
</body>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element pb
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   empty
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="break"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<param name="type" value="'page'"/>
<param name="label"
 value="(concat(if(@n) then concat(@n,' ') else '',if(@facs) then concat('@',@facs)
 else ''))"/>
<outputRendition> display: block; margin-left: 4pt; color: grey; float: right; </outputRe
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[Page ';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: ']';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<pc>

(punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [18.1.2. Below the Word Level 18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module analysis

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic

        - *@ana*
    - att.global.facs
        - *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
        - *@corresp*
        - *@next*
        - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        - *@cert*
        - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.linguistic
    - *@lemma*
    - *@lemmaRef*
- att.segLike
    - *@function*
    - att.fragmentable
        - *@part*
    - att.metrical
        - *@rhyme*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator
weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator
inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue

Member of model.linePart model.segLike
Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c

core: abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: subst supplied

character data

Example

```
<phr>
 <w>do</w>
 <w>you</w>
 <w>understand</w>
 <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

Example Example encoding of the German sentence *Wir fahren in den Urlaub.*, encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section AILALW.

```
<s>
 <w pos="PPER" msd="1.Pl.*.Nom">Wir</w>
 <w pos="VVFIN" msd="1.Pl.Pres.Ind">fahren</w>
 <w pos="APPR" msd="--">in</w>
 <w pos="ART" msd="Def.Masc.Akk.Sg.">den</w>
 <w pos="NN" msd="Masc.Akk.Sg.">Urlaub</w>
 <pc pos="$." msd="--" join="left">.</pc>
</s>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc
{
   att.global.attributes,
```

```
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.linguistic.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
   attribute unit { text }?,
   attribute pre { text }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit )*
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [14.3.2. The Person Element 16.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module namesdates

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.editLike
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*

@role specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or

servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

`@sex` specifies the sex of the person.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

`@gender` specifies the gender of the person.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

`@age` specifies an age group for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

Member of model.personLike

Contained by

corpus: particDesc

namesdates: listPerson

May contain

core: bibl cb gap lb listBibl milestone name note p pb ref

figures: figure

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor

transcr: fw

Example

```
<person sex="1">
 <p>William Shakespeare, born in Stratford-upon-Avon, 26 April 1564, died
in
   Stratford-upon-Avon, 23 April 1616, English playwright and poet</p>
</person>
```

Example

```
<person xml:id="Stevenson" sex="m"
 role="writer">
 <p>
  <name type="surname">Stevenson</name>
  <name type="forename">Robert</name>
  <name type="forename">Louis</name>
 </p>
</person>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element person
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { list { + } }?,
   attribute sex { list { + } }?,
   attribute gender { list { + } }?,
   attribute age { text }?,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global | model.ptrLike )* )
}
```

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location. [14.3.4. Places]

Module namesdates

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source

        * *@source*
    - att.editLike
    - att.sortable
        - *@sortKey*
    - att.typed
        - *@type*
        - *@subtype*

Member of model.placeLike

Contained by

corpus: settingDesc

namesdates: listPlace place

May contain

core: bibl desc head label listBibl name note p ref

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab

namesdates: listPlace place

Example

```
<place xml:id="Hereford">
 <p>
  <name type="place">Hereford</name>
  <name type="country">England</name>
 </p>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place xml:id="Lithuania">
 <p>
  <name type="country">Lithuania</name>
  <name type="country" xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</name>
 </p>
 <place xml:id="Vilnius">
  <p>
   <name>Vilnius</name>
  </p>
 </place>
 <place xml:id="Kaunas">
  <p>
   <name>Kaunas</name>
  </p>
 </place>
</place>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
```

```
    <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
    <elementRef key="name"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
   <elementRef key="idno"/>
   <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
   <elementRef key="link"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element place
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      model.headLike*,
      (
         model.pLike*
       | ( model.labelLike | model.placeStateLike | model.eventLike | name )*
      ),
      (
         model.noteLike       | model.biblLike       | model.ptrLike       | idno       |
      ( model.placeLike | listPlace )*
   )
}
```

<postscript>

contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs

        * *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
        * *@corresp*
        * *@next*
        * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
    - *@place*
- att.written
    - *@hand*

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

```
<div type="letter">
 <opener>
  <dateline>
   <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
   <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
 </opener>
 <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
   logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
   the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
   axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
 <closer>
```

```
      <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
      <signed>Seymour</signed>
    </closer>
    <postscript>
      <label>P.S.</label>
      <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul
  01</date>.</p>
    </postscript>
  </div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element postscript
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
      model.common,
      ( model.global | model.common )*,
      ( ( model.divBottomPart, model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<prefixDef> (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [17.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global

  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    * *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*
- att.patternReplacement
  - *@matchPattern*
  - *@replacementPattern*

`@ident` supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.prefix

Note The value is limited to `teidata.prefix` so that it may be mapped directly to a URI prefix.

Contained by: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

Example

```
<prefixDef ident="ref"
 matchPattern="([a-z]+)"
 replacementPattern="../../references/references.xml#$1">
 <p> In the context of this project, private URIs with
   the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in
   the project's global references.xml file.
```

```
  </p>
 </prefixDef>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element prefixDef
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.patternReplacement.attributes,
   attribute ident { text },
   model.pLike*
}
```

<profileDesc>

(text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

header: abstract creation langUsage textClass

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <date notAfter="1623"/>
 </creation>
 <langUsage>
  <language ident="eng">English</language>
 </langUsage>
 <textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
   <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 16th century</term>
   <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 17th century</term>
   <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
   <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
   <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
   <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
  </keywords>
 </textClass>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="omit"/>`

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*

- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<projectDesc>
 <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June
1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:projectDesc"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element projectDesc { att.global.attributes, model.pLike+ }
```

<pubPlace>

(publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    * *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    * *@ref*

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
 behaviour="omit">
<desc>Omit if located in teiHeader. </desc>
</model>
```

<publicationStmt>

(publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility

* *@cert*
* *@resp*

– att.global.source
* *@source*

Contained by: *header:* biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher ref

header: availability distributor idno

linking: ab

Note Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
 <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
 <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
 <availability>
  <p>Available under licence only</p>
 </availability>
 <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
 <date>2017</date>
 <availability>
  <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons
Attribution 4.0 International license.</p>
 </availability>
 <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
   <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"
```

```
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         (
            model.publicationStmtPart.agency,
            model.publicationStmtPart.detail*
         )+
      )
    | model.pLike+
   )
}
```

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical

– *@ref*

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```
<imprint>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
 <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element publisher
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
 behaviour="omit">
<desc>Omit if located in teiHeader. </desc>
</model>
```

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
  - *@toWhom*
  - att.ascribed
    - *@who*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

`@type` (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **spoken** (spoken) representation of speech

thought (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written (written) quotation from a written source

soCalled (so called) authorial distance

foreign (foreign) foreign words

distinct (distinct) linguistically distinct
term technical term
emph (emph) rhetorically emphasized
mentioned (mentioned) refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.common model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figDesc figure formula

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint epigraph imprimatur opener postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

Example

```
It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the
letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press
<q>0 0 f c</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element q
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
   }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="l" behaviour="block"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="ancestor::p or ancestor::cell"
 behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '‘';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: '’';</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*

  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.notated
  - *@notation*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.biblPart model.quoteLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear

drama: actor castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

Example

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his
slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element quote
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::p"
 behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
<desc>If it is inside a paragraph then it is inline, otherwise it is block
 level</desc>
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '‘';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: '’';</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<desc>If it is inside a paragraph then it is inline, otherwise it is block
 level</desc>
<outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<ref>

(reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 17.1. Links]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*

    - *@xml:space*
    - att.global.analytic
      - *@ana*
    - att.global.facs
      - *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
      - *@corresp*
      - *@next*
      - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
      - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
      - *@cert*
      - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
      - *@source*
- att.cReferencing
  - *@cRef*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.internetMedia
  - *@mimeType*
- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence publicationStmt rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

```
See especially
<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second
sentence</ref>
```

Example

```
See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:ref"> <sch:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <sch:name/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ref
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cReferencing.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.internetMedia.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"
 predicate="not(@target)"/>
```

```
<model predicate="not(text())"
 behaviour="link">
<param name="content" value="@target"/>
<param name="uri" value="@target"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="link">
<param name="uri" value="@target"/>
</model>
```

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<refsDecl>
 <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
  replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```
<refsDecl>
 <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
 <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
   element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
   number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
   followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
   level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:refsDecl"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="citeStructure"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="cRefPattern"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="refState" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | citeStructure+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}
```

<reg>

(regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization 13. Critical Apparatus]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking

        * *@corresp*
        * *@next*
        * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.editLike
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
 </choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
 </choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
 </choice>
</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element reg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<relatedItem>

contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.12.2.7. Related Items]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*

  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

`@target` points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.biblPart
Contained by
core: bibl
header: notesStmt
May contain
core: bibl listBibl ref
header: biblFull
Note If the *target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty.
Example

```
<bibl xml:id="Shirley1953">
 <author>Shirley, James</author>
 <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
 <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
 <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
 <date>1953</date>
 <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
 <relatedItem type="otherForm">
  <bibl>
   <author>Shirley, James</author>
   <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venicd</title>
   <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in
       Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
   <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
   <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
   <date>1655</date>
   <extent>78 p.</extent>
  </bibl>
 </relatedItem>
</bibl>
```

Example

```
<relatedItem type="otherForm"
 target="http://www.example.com/bibliography.xml#Shirley1655"/>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:relatedItem"> <sch:report test="@target and count(child::*) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a @target attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element relatedItem
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute target { text }?,
   ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<rendition>

(rendition) supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility

    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*
- att.styleDef
  - *@scheme*
  - *@schemeVersion*

@scope where CSS is used, provides a way of defining pseudo-elements, that is, styling rules applicable to specific sub-portions of an element.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element

first-letter styling applies to the first letter of the target element

before styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element

after styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element

@selector contains a selector or series of selectors specifying the elements to which the contained style description applies, expressed in the language specified in the *scheme* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<rendition scheme="css"
 selector="text, front, back, body, div, p, ab">
display: block;
</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
 selector="*[rend*=italic]"> font-style: italic;
</rendition>
```

Note Since the default value of the *scheme* attribute is assumed to be CSS, the default expectation for this attribute, in the absence of *scheme*, is that CSS selector syntax will be used.

While *rendition* is used to point from an element in the transcribed source to a <rendition> element in the header which describes how it appears, the *selector* attribute allows the encoder to point in the other direction: from a <rendition> in the header to a collection of elements which all share the same renditional features. In both cases, the intention is to record the appearance of the source text, not to prescribe any particular output rendering.

Contained by: tagsDecl

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: castList

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: subst

character data

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
 <rendition xml:id="r-center" scheme="css">text-align: center;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="r-small" scheme="css">font-size: small;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="r-large" scheme="css">font-size: large;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="initcaps"
  scope="first-letter" scheme="css">font-size: xx-large</rendition>
</tagsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rendition
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.styleDef.attributes,
   attribute scope { text }?,
   attribute selector { text }?,
   macro.limitedContent}
```

<resp>

(responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition

        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.canonical
    - *@ref*
- att.datable
    - *@period*
    - att.datable.w3c
        * *@when*
        * *@notBefore*
        * *@notAfter*
        * *@from*
        * *@to*

Contained by respStmt

May contain

core: abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num pb q ref rs term time title

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst

character data

Note The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at `http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html` for bibliographic usage.

Example

```
<respStmt>
 <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
 <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element resp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain

core: name note resp

Example

```
<respStmt>
 <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
 <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
 <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
 <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate>
   <sequence>
    <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   (
      ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) ),
      note*
   )
}
```

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.docStatus
  - *@status*

Contained by
core: teiHeader
header: teiHeader

May contain
core: list
header: change listChange

Note If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="list" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="listChange"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
```

```
   att.global.attributes,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   ( list+ | listChange+ | change+ )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="omit"/>`

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line. [6.5. Rhyme]

Module verse

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

`@label` provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.word

Note Within a particular scope, all <rhyme> elements with the same value for their *label* attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other. The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the *rhyme* attribute has been supplied.

Member of model.lPart

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<lg rhyme="abababcc">
 <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <rhyme label="a">wed</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>With persons of no sort of edu<rhyme label="b">cation</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and
<rhyme label="a">bred</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>Grow tired of scientific conver<rhyme label="b">sation</rhyme>:</l>
 <l>I don't choose to say much on this <rhyme label="a">head</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>I'm a plain man, and in a single <rhyme label="b">station</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>But — Oh! ye lords of ladies
inte<rhyme label="c">llectual</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-<rhyme label="c">peck'd you
all</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>
```

Example

```
<lg>
 <l>Tyger! Tyger! burning <rhyme label="a">bright</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>In the forests of the <rhyme label="a">night</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>What immortal hand or <rhyme label="b">eye</rhyme>
 </l>
```

```
 <l>Could frame thy fearful
<rhyme label="b" type="eye-rhyme">symmetry</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>
```

Example

```
<lg>
 <l>"Hark! Lakshman! Hark, again that <rhyme label="a">cry</rhyme>!</l>
 <l>It is, — it is my husband's <rhyme label="b">voice</rhyme>!</l>
 <l>hasten, to his succour <rhyme label="a">fly</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>No more hast thou, dear friend, a <rhyme label="b">choice</rhyme>.</l>
 <l>He calls on thee, perhaps his <rhyme label="c">foes</rhyme>
 </l>
 <l>Environ him on all sides <rhyme label="d">round</rhyme>,</l>
 <l>That wail, — it means death's final
<rhyme label="c">throes</rhyme>!</l>
 <l>Why standest thou, as magic-<rhyme label="d">bound</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rhyme
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute label { text }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<role>

(role) contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*

    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

`@gender` specifies the gender of the role.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.gender separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by *who* attributes on many other elements.

Example

```
<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element role
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute gender { list { + } }?,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character's role in a drama. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castGroup castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element roleDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<row> (row) contains one row of a table. [15.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.tableDecoration
  - ~~role~~
  - @rows
  - @cols

@role (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Derived from att.tableDecoration

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **data** data cell[Default]

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

Contained by: table

May contain figures: cell

Example

```
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
 <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element row
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
   att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
   attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
   cell+
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@role='label'"
 behaviour="row">
<outputRendition>font-weight: bold;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="row">
<desc>Insert table row. </desc>
</model>
```

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [14.2.1. Personal Names 3.6.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@ref*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rs
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]

Module analysis

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs

        - *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
        - *@corresp*
        - *@next*
        - *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        - *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        - *@cert*
        - *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        - *@source*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.notated
    - *@notation*
- att.segLike
    - *@function*
    - att.fragmentable
        - *@part*
    - att.metrical
        - *@rhyme*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead.

The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

Example

```
<head>
 <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:s"> <sch:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element s
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<salute>

(salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

- *@xml:lang*
- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: body closer div front group opener

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the
readinge.</salute>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element salute
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="parent::closer"
 behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<samplingDecl>

(sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in selecting texts, or parts of a text, for inclusion in the resource. [2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 16.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*

    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

Example

```
<samplingDecl>
 <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle,
or end of each
   text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:samplingDecl"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element samplingDecl { att.global.attributes, model.pLike+ }
```

<seg>

(arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module linking

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    * *@facs*

  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.notated
  - *@notation*
- att.segLike
  - *@function*
  - att.fragmentable
    - *@part*
  - att.metrical
    - *@rhyme*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.choicePart model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a `<ptr>` or other similar element.

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
 <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the
ballfield.
</s>
```

Example

```
<seg type="preamble">
 <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king
in Frankish country.</seg>
 <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
 <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>
</seg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seg
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"
 useSourceRendition="true"/>
```

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by
header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: biblScope editor p respStmt title

header: idno

linking: ab

Example

```
<seriesStmt>
 <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>ed. by</resp>
  <name>Jan Gonda</name>
 </respStmt>
 <biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
 <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:seriesStmt"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence>
   <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="editor"/>
    <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
    <elementRef key="biblScope"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seriesStmt
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )*, ( idno | biblScope )* ) )
}
```

<set>

(setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction). [7.1. Front and Back Matter]

Module drama

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*

- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Member of model.frontPart.drama

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

drama: castList

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Note Contains paragraphs or phrase level tags.

This element should not be used outside the front or back matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the <stage> element.

Example

```
<set>
 <p>The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon and
six in the
   afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works, on the borders of
England and Wales,
   where a strike has been in progress throughout the winter.</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<set>
 <head>SCENE</head>
 <p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<front>
<!-- <titlePage>, <div type="Dedication">, etc. -->
 <set>
  <list type="gloss">
   <label>TIME</label>
   <item>1907</item>
   <label>PLACE</label>
   <item>East Coast village in England</item>
  </list>
 </set>
</front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.common"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element set
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( ( model.common, model.global* )* ) )
}
```

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [16.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]

Module corpus

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source

* *@source*

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: listPlace place

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of `<setting>` elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside `<standOff>` should be preferred.

Example

```
<settingDesc>
 <p>Texts recorded in the
   Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988
</p>
</settingDesc>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:settingDesc"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="setting"/>
   <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element settingDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( model.pLike+ | ( setting | model.placeLike | listPlace )+ )
}
```

<sic>

(Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*

  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    * *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    * *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <choice>
 <sic>we can</sic>
 <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
 <sic>a Table</sic>
 <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sic { att.global.attributes, att.cmc.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="parent::choice and count(parent::*/*) gt 1"
 behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '{';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: '}';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<signed>

(signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

Example

```
<closer>
 <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
 <list>
   <item>John Bull,</item>
   <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
 </signed>
</closer>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element signed
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"
 predicate="parent::closer">
<outputRendition> text-align: right; </outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition> font-style: italic; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<sourceDesc>

(source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as born digital for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*

- *@xml:base*
- *@xml:space*
- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

Contained by: biblFull fileDesc
May contain
core: bibl list listBibl p
figures: table
header: biblFull
linking: ab
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
Example

```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
 <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
 <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
 <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:sourceDesc"/> </sch:pattern>
Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
```

```
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
   )
}
```

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
  - *@toWhom*
  - att.ascribed
    - *@who*

- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote stage

drama: castList set

figures: cell figure

header: change licence

textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

May contain

core: cb cit gap l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote speaker stage

figures: figure table

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Note The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Example

```
<sp>
 <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
 <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
 <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
 <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
first place [...]</p>
 <p>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
for the present I
   will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.stageLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
      <elementRef key="speaker"
       minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
       <elementRef key="lg"/>
       <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
       <elementRef key="q"/>
       <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="lg"/>
      <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
      <elementRef key="q"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <elementRef key="lg"/>
     <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
     <elementRef key="q"/>
     <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( ( model.stageLike, model.global* )* ),
      (
         (
```

```
            ( speaker, model.global* ),
            (
               (
                  lg                | model.lLike                | model.pLike
               model.global*
            )
         )
       | (
            (
               lg             | model.lLike             | model.pLike             | model
            model.global*
         )
      ),
      (
         (
            (
               lg             | model.lLike             | model.pLike             | model
            model.global*
         )*
      )
   )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.placement

- *@place*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Contained by: sp

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note This element may be used to transcribe which character is speaking in a dramatic text as indicated by the source text; the *who* attribute of an <sp> element may be used to point to another element (typically a <role>) which provides information about the character speaking. Either or both may be used.

Example

```
<div type="Act" n="I">
 <head>ACT I</head>
 <div type="Scene" n="1">
  <head>SCENE I</head>
  <stage rendition="#italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels,
at
     several doors</stage>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
   <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
   <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Barn</speaker>
   <l part="F">He.</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
   <speaker>Fran</speaker>
```

```
      <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
    </sp>
  <!-- ... -->
   </div>
  </div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element speaker
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition> font-style:italic; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility

        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.ascribed.directed
    - *@toWhom*
    - att.ascribed
        * *@who*
- att.cmc
    - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
    - *@place*
- att.written
    - *@hand*

`@type` indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Note If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and
falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an
empiric</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

Example

```
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
<hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
   straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
   two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate
thus till the rest of the
 <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
   order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element stage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "setting"
          | "entrance"
          | "exit"
          | "business"
          | "novelistic"
          | "delivery"
          | "modifier"
          | "location"
          | "mixed"
         )*
      }
   }?,
   macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [12.3.1.5. Substitutions]

Module transcr

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*

  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.transcriptional
  - *@status*
  - *@cause*
  - *@seq*
  - att.editLike
  - att.placement
    - *@place*
  - att.written
    - *@hand*

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: add cb del lb milestone pb

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example

```
... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
<subst>
 <add>T</add>
 <del>t</del>
```

```
</subst>he expressed
```

Example

```
 that he and his Sister Miſs D — <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be
<subst>
 <del>very</del>
 <lb/>
 <add>principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.
```

Example

```
<ab>τ<subst>
  <add place="above">ῶν</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
συνκυρόντ<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
ἐργαστηρί<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
</ab>
```

Example

```
<subst>
 <del>
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
   unit="character"/>
 </del>
 <add>apple</add>
</subst>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:subst"> <sch:assert test="child::tei:add and (child::tei:del or child::tei:surplus)"> <sch:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del or surplus</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="add"/>
  <elementRef key="surplus"/>
  <elementRef key="del"/>
  <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element subst
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.transcriptional.attributes,
```

```
   ( add | surplus | del | model.milestoneLike )+
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<supplied>

(supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [12.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.editLike

`@reason` one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. *overbinding*, *faded-ink*, *lost-folio*, *omitted-in-original*.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The **<damage>**, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

Example

```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible"
 source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
Sydney Smith
```

Example

```
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of
Bejar
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element supplied
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="parent::choice"
 behaviour="inline"/>
<model predicate="@reason='damage'"
 behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"<";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:">";</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@reason='illegible' or not(@reason)"
 behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"[";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:"]";</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@reason='omitted'"
 behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"(";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:")";</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content:"{";</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content:"}";</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and, when using an embedded transcription approach, transcriptions of the writing within them. [12.1. Digital Facsimiles 12.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*

        * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.coordinated
    - *@start*
    - *@ulx*
    - *@uly*
    - *@lrx*
    - *@lry*
    - *@points*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

`@attachment` describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: **glued** glued in place
pinned pinned or stapled in place
sewn sewn in place

`@flipping` indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue

Contained by: *transcr:* facsimile surface zone
May contain
core: cb desc gap graphic label lb milestone note pb
figures: figure formula
linking: anchor
transcr: fw surface zone
Note The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.

The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *lrx* - *ulx* units wide and *uly* - *lry* units high.

The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.

Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the `<surfaceGrp>` element.

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate>
    <elementRef key="zone"/>
    <elementRef key="line"/>
    <elementRef key="path"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surface
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.coordinated.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute attachment { text }?,
   attribute flipping { text }?,
   (
      ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*,
      ( ( ( zone | line | path | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

<table>

(table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [15.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*

  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

@rows (rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

drama: castList set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap graphic head lb milestone note pb

figures: figure formula row

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

Example

```
<table rows="4" cols="4">
 <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
 <row role="label">
  <cell role="data"/>
  <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
  <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
  <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
 </row>
 <row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
  <cell role="data">8</cell>
  <cell role="data">128</cell>
 </row>
 <row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">6</cell>
  <cell role="data">36</cell>
 </row>
 <row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
  <cell role="data">20</cell>
 </row>
 <row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
  <cell role="data">1</cell>
  <cell role="data">11</cell>
  <cell role="data">22</cell>
 </row>
</table>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="row"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element table
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute rows { text }?,
   attribute cols { text }?,
   (
      ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
      (
         ( ( row, model.global* )+ )
       | ( ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="table">
<outputRendition> font-size: smaller; background-color: #F0F0F0; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<tagUsage> (element usage) documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*

- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

@gi (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent <namespace> element.
Status Required
Datatype teidata.name

@occurs specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.
Status Recommended
Datatype teidata.count

@withId (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global *xml:id* attribute.
Status Recommended
Datatype teidata.count

Contained by: namespace
May contain
core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expan foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: castList
figures: table
header: biblFull idno
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: subst
character data
Example

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
 <rendition xml:id="it" scheme="css"
  selector="foreign, hi"> font-style: italic; </rendition>
<!-- ... -->
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used to mark English words
italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
```

```
  <tagUsage gi="foreign">Used to mark non-English words in the copy
text.</tagUsage>
<!-- ... -->
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element tagUsage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute gi { text },
   attribute occurs { text }?,
   attribute withId { text }?,
   macro.limitedContent}
```

<tagsDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

`@partial` indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Note TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: namespace rendition

Example

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
 <rendition xml:id="rend-it" scheme="css"
  selector="emph, hi, name, title">font-style: italic;</rendition>
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"/>
  <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"/>
 </namespace>
 <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
  <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

If the *partial* attribute were not specified here, the implication would be that the document in question contains only <hi>, <title>, and `<para>` elements.

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="rendition" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="namespace" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element tagsDecl
{
   att.global.attributes,
   attribute partial { text }?,
   ( rendition*, namespace* )
}
```

<taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: *header:* classDecl taxonomy

May contain

core: bibl desc listBibl

header: biblFull category taxonomy

Note Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested.

Example

```
<classDecl>
 <taxonomy xml:id="OTASH">
  <bibl>University of Oxford Text Archive Subject Headings</bibl>
 </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Example

```
<taxonomy>
 <category xml:id="literature">
  <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="poetry">
   <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
   <category xml:id="sonnet">
    <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
```

```
        <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
       </category>
       <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
        <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
       </category>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="haiku">
       <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
      </category>
     </category>
     <category xml:id="drama">
      <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
     </category>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="meter">
     <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
     <category xml:id="feet">
      <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="iambic">
       <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="trochaic">
       <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
      </category>
     </category>
     <category xml:id="feetNumber">
      <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
      <category xml:id="pentameter">
       <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tetrameter">
       <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc>
      </category>
     </category>
    </category>
   </taxonomy>
   <!-- elsewhere in document -->
   <lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">
    <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</l>
   <!-- ... -->
   </lg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.descLike"
      minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
     <elementRef key="equiv" minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="1"/>
     <elementRef key="gloss" minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
```

```
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="category"/>
     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element taxonomy
{
   att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         ( category | taxonomy )+
       | ( ( model.descLike | equiv | gloss )+, ( category | taxonomy )* )
      )
    | ( model.biblLike, ( category | taxonomy )* )
   )
}
```

<teiCorpus>

(TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition

        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*

- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*

`@version` (version) specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.version

Note Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *source* attribute on the associated `<schemaSpec>`.

Member of model.describedResource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

May contain

core: teiCorpus

header: teiHeader

textstructure: TEI text

transcr: facsimile

Note Should contain one <teiHeader> for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.

As with all elements in the TEI scheme (except `<egXML>`) this element is in the TEI namespace (see 5.7.2. Namespaces). Thus, when it is used as the outermost element of a TEI document, it is necessary to specify the TEI namespace on it. This is customarily achieved by including http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 as the value of the XML namespace declaration (xmlns), without indicating a prefix, and then not using a prefix on TEI elements in the rest of the document. For example: <teiCorpus version="4.8.1" xml:lang="en" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">.

Example

```
<teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!-- header for corpus -->
 </teiHeader>
 <TEI>
  <teiHeader>
<!-- header for first text -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
<!-- content of first text -->
```

```
      </text>
     </TEI>
     <TEI>
      <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for second text -->
      </teiHeader>
      <text>
    <!-- content of second text -->
      </text>
     </TEI>
    <!-- more TEI elements here -->
    </teiCorpus>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <classRef key="model.resource"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.describedResource"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiCorpus
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   attribute version { text }?,
   ( teiHeader, model.resource*, model.describedResource+ )
}
```

<teiHeader>

(TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*

    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

Contained by teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI
May contain
header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc xenoData
Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>THE TEMPEST.</title>
   <author>Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <distributor>
    <name>University of Oxford Text Archive</name>
    <address>
     <addrLine>Oxford University Computing Services</addrLine>
     <addrLine>13 Banbury Road</addrLine>
     <addrLine>Oxford</addrLine>
     <addrLine>OX2 6NN</addrLine>
    </address>
    <email>ota@oucs.ox.ac.uk</email>
   </distributor>
   <idno type="ota">http://ota.ox.ac.uk/id/5725</idno>
   <idno type="isbn10">1106027248</idno>
   <idno type="isbn13">9781106027245</idno>
   <availability status="free">
    <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/">
Distributed by the University of Oxford under a Creative Commons
         Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License </licence>
   </availability>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
   <bibl>Revised version of <relatedItem type="older"
     target="http://ota.ox.ac.uk/id/0119"/>
   </bibl>
   <bibl>The texts were originally prepared by Trevor Howard-Hill for use
in
       his single volume concordances to Shakespeare (OUP, 1969f). They
have
       since been reformatted to modern standards and carefully proofread
by
       staff of Oxford University Press' Shakespeare Department for use in
the
       new "Old Spelling" Oxford Shakespeare, under the general editorship
of Dr
```

```
        Stanley Wells: <title>The complete works / William
Shakespeare</title>;
        general editors, Stanley Wells and Gary Taylor ; editors Stanley
Wells ...
        [et al.] ; with introductions by Stanley Wells. -- Oxford :
Clarendon
        Press, 1986. -- (Oxford Shakespeare). -- ISBN 0-19-812926-2</bibl>
    <biblFull>
     <titleStmt>
      <title>THE TEMPEST.</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616</author>
      <editor role="editor">Lee, Sidney, Sir, 1859-1926</editor>
     </titleStmt>
     <extent>xxxv, 908 p. : facsims. ; 39 cm.</extent>
     <publicationStmt>
      <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
      <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
      <date>1902</date>
     </publicationStmt>
    </biblFull>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
  <encodingDesc>
   <classDecl>
    <taxonomy xml:id="OTASH">
     <bibl>University of Oxford Text Archive Subject Headings</bibl>
    </taxonomy>
    <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
     <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
    </taxonomy>
   </classDecl>
  </encodingDesc>
  <profileDesc>
   <creation>
    <date notAfter="1623"/>
   </creation>
   <langUsage>
    <language ident="eng">English</language>
   </langUsage>
   <textClass>
    <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
     <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 16th century</term>
     <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 17th century</term>
     <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
     <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
     <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
     <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
    </keywords>
   </textClass>
  </profileDesc>
  <revisionDesc>
   <change when="2010-08-31">Header normalised</change>
  </revisionDesc>
 </teiHeader>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
   minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
   att.global.attributes,
   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="metadata"/>`

<term>

(term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cReferencing
  - *@cRef*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*

- att.pointing
  - *@targetLang*
  - *@target*
  - *@evaluate*
- att.sortable
  - *@sortKey*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent keywords language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note This element should only be used in the TEI Header

Example

```
<keywords>
 <term>huntin</term>
 <term>shootin</term>
 <term>fishin</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element term
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cReferencing.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.pointing.attributes,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq}
```

<text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 16.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written

– *@hand*

Member of model.resource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI group

May contain

core: cb gap lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: fw

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

Example

```
<text>
 <front>
  <docTitle>
   <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
 </front>
 <body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
 </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
 <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first text -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second text -->
  </text>
 </group>
</text>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:term | tei:biblFull"> <sch:report test="ancestor::tei:text">Error: The element <sch:name/> is not permitted outside the header</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
```

```
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="back"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element text
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( ( front, model.global* )? ),
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( ( back, model.global* )? )
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="body">
<outputRendition> max-width: 80%; margin: auto; font-family: Verdana, Tahoma,
 Geneva, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<textClass>

(text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs

    * *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    * *@corresp*
    * *@next*
    * *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    * *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    * *@cert*
    * *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    * *@source*

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: catRef classCode keywords

Example

```
<taxonomy>
 <category xml:id="acprose">
  <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
 </category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
 <catRef target="#acprose"/>
 <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
 <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
   <item>End of the world</item>
   <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable">
<sch:param name="tde" value="tei:textClass"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="classCode"/>
  <elementRef key="catRef"/>
  <elementRef key="keywords"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element textClass { att.global.attributes, ( classCode | catRef | keywords )* }
```

<time> (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.calendarSystem
  - *@calendar*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*

  - *@scope*
- att.editLike
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck — <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element time
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.calendarSystem.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<title>

(title) contains a title for any kind of work. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.canonical
  - *@ref*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c

    * *@when*
    * *@notBefore*
    * *@notAfter*
    * *@from*
    * *@to*

- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

`@level` indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works

j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection

u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an `<analytic>` element is *ipso facto* of level a, and one appearing within a `<series>` element of level s. For this reason, the *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition seriesStmt tagUsage titleStmt

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">
 <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
 <title type="sub">an international journal for
   epistemology, methodology and history of
   science</title>
</title>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element title
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<modelSequence predicate="parent::titleStmt/parent::fileDesc">
<model predicate="preceding-sibling::title"
 behaviour="text">
 <param name="content" value="' – '"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
 <outputRendition>color: red; font-size: 2em;</outputRendition>
</model>
</modelSequence>
<model predicate="not(@level) and parent::bibl"
 behaviour="inline"/>
<modelSequence predicate="@level='m' or not(@level)">
<model behaviour="inline">
 <outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="ancestor::biblFull"
 behaviour="text">
 <param name="content" value="', '"/>
</model>
</modelSequence>
<modelSequence predicate="@level='s' or @level='j'">
<model behaviour="inline">
 <outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="following-sibling::* and ( ancestor::biblFull)"
 behaviour="text">
 <param name="content" value="', '"/>
</model>
</modelSequence>
<modelSequence predicate="@level='u' or @level='a'">
<model behaviour="inline">
 <outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

```
<model predicate="following-sibling::* and ( ancestor::biblFull)"
 behaviour="text">
 <param name="content" value="'. '"/>
</model>
</modelSequence>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: cb gap graphic lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

transcr: fw

Example

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the
West.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
 <byline>By T.D.</byline>
 <figure>
  <head>TP</head>
  <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
  <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
 </figure>
 <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
 </docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titlePage
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   (
      model.global*,
      model.titlepagePart,
      ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
   )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"
 useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition> text-align: center;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<titlePart>

(title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.typed
  - ~~type~~
  - @subtype

`@type` (type) specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **main** (main) main title of the work[Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short (short) abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<docTitle>
 <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
   AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
   Moll Flanders, &c.
 </titlePart>
 <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
   And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
   Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
   Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
   once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
   Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
   at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
 <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block" useSourceRendition="true"/>
```

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*

Contained by: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor respStmt title

Example

```
<titleStmt>
 <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
transcription</title>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>compiled by</resp>
  <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.respLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.
[4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castGroup

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

Example

```
<trailer>
 <l>In stead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send,</l>
 <l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>
  <hi>Hamans</hi> END.</l>
</trailer>
```

From EEBO A87070

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element trailer
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
```

```
    | lg    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.lLike    | model.
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>color: green;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<unclear>

(unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [12.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.dimensions
  - *@unit*
  - *@quantity*
  - *@extent*
  - *@scope*
- att.editLike

`@reason` indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **illegible** (illegible)

inaudible (inaudible)

faded (faded)

background_noise (background noise)

eccentric_ductus (eccentric ductus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs

```
<div>
 <head>Rx</head>
 <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
 </p>
</div>
```

Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.

`@agent` Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 22. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.

The **<damage>**, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 12.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 12.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example

```
<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said
... </u>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element unclear
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "illegible"
          | "inaudible"
          | "faded"
          | "background_noise"
          | "eccentric_ductus"
         )+
      }
   }?,
   attribute agent { text }?,
   macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="after">content: ' [?] ';</outputRendition>
```

```
</model>
```

<unicodeProp>

(unicode property) provides a Unicode property for a character (or glyph). [5.2.1. Character Properties]

Module gaiji

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.gaijiProp
  - ~~name~~
  - ~~value~~
  - @version
  - @scheme
- att.datable
  - @period
- att.datable.w3c
  - @when
  - @notBefore
  - @notAfter
  - @from
  - @to

`@name` specifies the normalized name of a Unicode property.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.xmlName

Legal values are: **Age**
AHex
Alpha
Alphabetic
ASCII_Hex_Digit
bc
Bidi_C
Bidi_Class
Bidi_Control
Bidi_M
Bidi_Mirrored
Bidi_Mirroring_Glyph
Bidi_Paired_Bracket
Bidi_Paired_Bracket_Type
blk
Block
bmg
bpb
bpt
Canonical_Combining_Class
Case_Folding
Case_Ignorable
Cased
ccc
CE
cf
Changes_When_Casefolded
Changes_When_Casemapped
Changes_When_Lowercased
Changes_When_NFKC_Casefolded
Changes_When_Titlecased
Changes_When_Uppercased
CI
Comp_Ex
Composition_Exclusion
CWCF
CWCM
CWKCF
CWL
CWT
CWU
Dash
Decomposition_Mapping
Decomposition_Type
Default_Ignorable_Code_Point

Dep
Deprecated
DI
Dia
Diacritic
dm
dt
ea
East_Asian_Width
EqUIdeo
Equivalent_Unified_Ideograph
Expands_On_NFC
Expands_On_NFD
Expands_On_NFKC
Expands_On_NFKD
Ext
Extender
FC_NFKC
FC_NFKC_Closure
Full_Composition_Exclusion
gc
GCB
General_Category
Gr_Base
Gr_Ext
Gr_Link
Grapheme_Base
Grapheme_Cluster_Break
Grapheme_Extend
Grapheme_Link
Hangul_Syllable_Type
Hex
Hex_Digit
hst
Hyphen
ID_Continue
ID_Start
IDC
Ideo
Ideographic
IDS
IDS_Binary_Operator
IDS_Trinary_Operator
IDSB
IDST

Indic_Positional_Category
Indic_Syllabic_Category
InPC
InSC
isc
ISO_Comment
Jamo_Short_Name
jg
Join_C
Join_Control
Joining_Group
Joining_Type
JSN
jt
kAccountingNumeric
kCompatibilityVariant
kIICore
kIRG_GSource
kIRG_HSource
kIRG_JSource
kIRG_KPSource
kIRG_KSource
kIRG_MSource
kIRG_TSource
kIRG_USource
kIRG_VSource
kOtherNumeric
kPrimaryNumeric
kRSUnicode
lb
lc
Line_Break
LOE
Logical_Order_Exception
Lower
Lowercase
Lowercase_Mapping
Math
na
na1
Name
Name_Alias
NChar
NFC_QC
NFC_Quick_Check

NFD_QC
NFD_Quick_Check
NFKC_Casefold
NFKC_CF
NFKC_QC
NFKC_Quick_Check
NFKD_QC
NFKD_Quick_Check
Noncharacter_Code_Point
nt
Numeric_Type
Numeric_Value
nv
OAlpha
ODI
OGr_Ext
OIDC
OIDS
OLower
OMath
Other_Alphabetic
Other_Default_Ignorable_Code_Point
Other_Grapheme_Extend
Other_ID_Continue
Other_ID_Start
Other_Lowercase
Other_Math
Other_Uppercase
OUpper
Pat_Syn
Pat_WS
Pattern_Syntax
Pattern_White_Space
PCM
Prepended_Concatenation_Mark
QMark
Quotation_Mark
Radical
Regional_Indicator
RI
SB
sc
scf
Script
Script_Extensions

scx
SD
Sentence_Break
Sentence_Terminal
Simple_Case_Folding
Simple_Lowercase_Mapping
Simple_Titlecase_Mapping
Simple_Uppercase_Mapping
slc
Soft_Dotted
stc
STerm
suc
tc
Term
Terminal_Punctuation
Titlecase_Mapping
uc
UIdeo
Unicode_1_Name
Unified_Ideograph
Upper
Uppercase
Uppercase_Mapping
Variation_Selector
Vertical_Orientation
vo
VS
WB
White_Space
Word_Break
WSpace
XID_Continue
XID_Start
XIDC
XIDS
XO_NFC
XO_NFD
XO_NFKC
XO_NFKD

`@value` specifies the value of a named Unicode property.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.text

Contained by: char glyph

May contain Empty element

Note A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard.

Example

```
<char xml:id="U4EBA_circled">
 <unicodeProp name="Decomposition_Mapping"
  value="circle" version="12.1"/>
 <localProp name="Name"
  value="CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA"/>
 <localProp name="daikanwa" value="36"/>
 <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element unicodeProp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.gaijiProp.attribute.version,
   att.gaijiProp.attribute.scheme,
   att.datable.attribute.period,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
   attribute name
   {
      "Age"
    | "AHex"
    | "Alpha"
    | "Alphabetic"
    | "ASCII_Hex_Digit"
    | "bc"
    | "Bidi_C"
    | "Bidi_Class"
    | "Bidi_Control"
    | "Bidi_M"
    | "Bidi_Mirrored"
    | "Bidi_Mirroring_Glyph"
    | "Bidi_Paired_Bracket"
    | "Bidi_Paired_Bracket_Type"
    | "blk"
    | "Block"
    | "bmg"
    | "bpb"
    | "bpt"
    | "Canonical_Combining_Class"
    | "Case_Folding"
    | "Case_Ignorable"
    | "Cased"
    | "ccc"
    | "CE"
    | "cf"
    | "Changes_When_Casefolded"
    | "Changes_When_Casemapped"
    | "Changes_When_Lowercased"
    | "Changes_When_NFKC_Casefolded"
    | "Changes_When_Titlecased"
    | "Changes_When_Uppercased"
```

```
      | "CI"
      | "Comp_Ex"
      | "Composition_Exclusion"
      | "CWCF"
      | "CWCM"
      | "CWKCF"
      | "CWL"
      | "CWT"
      | "CWU"
      | "Dash"
      | "Decomposition_Mapping"
      | "Decomposition_Type"
      | "Default_Ignorable_Code_Point"
      | "Dep"
      | "Deprecated"
      | "DI"
      | "Dia"
      | "Diacritic"
      | "dm"
      | "dt"
      | "ea"
      | "East_Asian_Width"
      | "EqUIdeo"
      | "Equivalent_Unified_Ideograph"
      | "Expands_On_NFC"
      | "Expands_On_NFD"
      | "Expands_On_NFKC"
      | "Expands_On_NFKD"
      | "Ext"
      | "Extender"
      | "FC_NFKC"
      | "FC_NFKC_Closure"
      | "Full_Composition_Exclusion"
      | "gc"
      | "GCB"
      | "General_Category"
      | "Gr_Base"
      | "Gr_Ext"
      | "Gr_Link"
      | "Grapheme_Base"
      | "Grapheme_Cluster_Break"
      | "Grapheme_Extend"
      | "Grapheme_Link"
      | "Hangul_Syllable_Type"
      | "Hex"
      | "Hex_Digit"
      | "hst"
      | "Hyphen"
      | "ID_Continue"
      | "ID_Start"
      | "IDC"
      | "Ideo"
      | "Ideographic"
      | "IDS"
      | "IDS_Binary_Operator"
      | "IDS_Trinary_Operator"
      | "IDSB"
      | "IDST"
      | "Indic_Positional_Category"
      | "Indic_Syllabic_Category"
      | "InPC"
      | "InSC"
      | "isc"
```

```
| "ISO_Comment"
| "Jamo_Short_Name"
| "jg"
| "Join_C"
| "Join_Control"
| "Joining_Group"
| "Joining_Type"
| "JSN"
| "jt"
| "kAccountingNumeric"
| "kCompatibilityVariant"
| "kIICore"
| "kIRG_GSource"
| "kIRG_HSource"
| "kIRG_JSource"
| "kIRG_KPSource"
| "kIRG_KSource"
| "kIRG_MSource"
| "kIRG_TSource"
| "kIRG_USource"
| "kIRG_VSource"
| "kOtherNumeric"
| "kPrimaryNumeric"
| "kRSUnicode"
| "lb"
| "lc"
| "Line_Break"
| "LOE"
| "Logical_Order_Exception"
| "Lower"
| "Lowercase"
| "Lowercase_Mapping"
| "Math"
| "na"
| "na1"
| "Name"
| "Name_Alias"
| "NChar"
| "NFC_QC"
| "NFC_Quick_Check"
| "NFD_QC"
| "NFD_Quick_Check"
| "NFKC_Casefold"
| "NFKC_CF"
| "NFKC_QC"
| "NFKC_Quick_Check"
| "NFKD_QC"
| "NFKD_Quick_Check"
| "Noncharacter_Code_Point"
| "nt"
| "Numeric_Type"
| "Numeric_Value"
| "nv"
| "OAlpha"
| "ODI"
| "OGr_Ext"
| "OIDC"
| "OIDS"
| "OLower"
| "OMath"
| "Other_Alphabetic"
| "Other_Default_Ignorable_Code_Point"
| "Other_Grapheme_Extend"
```

```
    | "Other_ID_Continue"
    | "Other_ID_Start"
    | "Other_Lowercase"
    | "Other_Math"
    | "Other_Uppercase"
    | "OUpper"
    | "Pat_Syn"
    | "Pat_WS"
    | "Pattern_Syntax"
    | "Pattern_White_Space"
    | "PCM"
    | "Prepended_Concatenation_Mark"
    | "QMark"
    | "Quotation_Mark"
    | "Radical"
    | "Regional_Indicator"
    | "RI"
    | "SB"
    | "sc"
    | "scf"
    | "Script"
    | "Script_Extensions"
    | "scx"
    | "SD"
    | "Sentence_Break"
    | "Sentence_Terminal"
    | "Simple_Case_Folding"
    | "Simple_Lowercase_Mapping"
    | "Simple_Titlecase_Mapping"
    | "Simple_Uppercase_Mapping"
    | "slc"
    | "Soft_Dotted"
    | "stc"
    | "STerm"
    | "suc"
    | "tc"
    | "Term"
    | "Terminal_Punctuation"
    | "Titlecase_Mapping"
    | "uc"
    | "UIdeo"
    | "Unicode_1_Name"
    | "Unified_Ideograph"
    | "Upper"
    | "Uppercase"
    | "Uppercase_Mapping"
    | "Variation_Selector"
    | "Vertical_Orientation"
    | "vo"
    | "VS"
    | "WB"
    | "White_Space"
    | "Word_Break"
    | "WSpace"
    | "XID_Continue"
    | "XID_Start"
    | "XIDC"
    | "XIDS"
    | "XO_NFC"
    | "XO_NFD"
    | "XO_NFKC"
    | "XO_NFKD"
  },
```

```
   attribute value { text },
   empty
}
```

<unihanProp>

(unihan property) holds the name and value of a normative or informative Unihan character (or glyph) property as part of its attributes. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

Module gaiji

Attributes

- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.gaijiProp
  - ~~name~~
  - ~~value~~
  - @version
  - @scheme
- att.datable
  - @period
- att.datable.w3c
  - @when
  - @notBefore
  - @notAfter
  - @from
  - @to

`@name` specifies the normalized name of a unicode han database (Unihan) property.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.xmlName
Legal values are: **kZVariant**
kAccountingNumeric
kBigFive
kCCCII
kCNS1986
kCNS1992
kCangjie
kCantonese
kCheungBauer
kCheungBauerIndex
kCihaiT
kCompatibilityVariant
kCowles
kDaeJaweon
kDefinition
kEACC
kFenn
kFennIndex
kFourCornerCode
kFrequency
kGB0
kGB1
kGB3
kGB5
kGB7
kGB8
kGSR
kGradeLevel
kHDZRadBreak
kHKGlyph
kHKSCS
kHanYu
kHangul
kHanyuPinlu
kHanyuPinyin
kIBMJapan
kIICore
kIRGDaeJaweon
kIRGDaiKanwaZiten
kIRGHanyuDaZidian
kIRGKangXi
kIRG_GSource
kIRG_HSource

kIRG_JSource
kIRG_KPSource
kIRG_KSource
kIRG_MSource
kIRG_TSource
kIRG_USource
kIRG_VSource
kJIS0213
kJa
kJapaneseKun
kJapaneseOn
kJinmeiyoKanji
kJis0
kJis1
kJoyoKanji
kKPS0
kKPS1
kKSC0
kKSC1
kKangXi
kKarlgren
kKorean
kKoreanEducationHanja
kKoreanName
kLau
kMainlandTelegraph
kMandarin
kMatthews
kMeyerWempe
kMorohashi
kNelson
kOtherNumeric
kPhonetic
kPrimaryNumeric
kPseudoGB1
kRSAdobe_Japan1_6
kRSJapanese
kRSKanWa
kRSKangXi
kRSKorean
kRSUnicode
kSBGY
kSemanticVariant
kSimplifiedVariant
kSpecializedSemanticVariant

kTGH
kTaiwanTelegraph
kTang
kTotalStrokes
kTraditionalVariant
kVietnamese
kXHC1983
kXerox

`@value` specifies the value of a named Unihan property

Status Required

Datatype teidata.word

Contained by: char glyph

May contain Empty element

Note A definitive list of current Unihan property names is provided in the Unicode Han Database.

Example

```
<unihanProp name="kRSKangXi" value="120.5"
 version="12.1"/>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element unihanProp
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.gaijiProp.attribute.version,
   att.gaijiProp.attribute.scheme,
   att.datable.attribute.period,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.notBefore,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.notAfter,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
   attribute name
   {
      "kZVariant"
    | "kAccountingNumeric"
    | "kBigFive"
    | "kCCCII"
    | "kCNS1986"
    | "kCNS1992"
    | "kCangjie"
    | "kCantonese"
    | "kCheungBauer"
    | "kCheungBauerIndex"
    | "kCihaiT"
    | "kCompatibilityVariant"
    | "kCowles"
    | "kDaeJaweon"
    | "kDefinition"
    | "kEACC"
    | "kFenn"
    | "kFennIndex"
    | "kFourCornerCode"
    | "kFrequency"
```

```
    | "kGB0"
    | "kGB1"
    | "kGB3"
    | "kGB5"
    | "kGB7"
    | "kGB8"
    | "kGSR"
    | "kGradeLevel"
    | "kHDZRadBreak"
    | "kHKGlyph"
    | "kHKSCS"
    | "kHanYu"
    | "kHangul"
    | "kHanyuPinlu"
    | "kHanyuPinyin"
    | "kIBMJapan"
    | "kIICore"
    | "kIRGDaeJaweon"
    | "kIRGDaiKanwaZiten"
    | "kIRGHanyuDaZidian"
    | "kIRGKangXi"
    | "kIRG_GSource"
    | "kIRG_HSource"
    | "kIRG_JSource"
    | "kIRG_KPSource"
    | "kIRG_KSource"
    | "kIRG_MSource"
    | "kIRG_TSource"
    | "kIRG_USource"
    | "kIRG_VSource"
    | "kJIS0213"
    | "kJa"
    | "kJapaneseKun"
    | "kJapaneseOn"
    | "kJinmeiyoKanji"
    | "kJis0"
    | "kJis1"
    | "kJoyoKanji"
    | "kKPS0"
    | "kKPS1"
    | "kKSC0"
    | "kKSC1"
    | "kKangXi"
    | "kKarlgren"
    | "kKorean"
    | "kKoreanEducationHanja"
    | "kKoreanName"
    | "kLau"
    | "kMainlandTelegraph"
    | "kMandarin"
    | "kMatthews"
    | "kMeyerWempe"
    | "kMorohashi"
    | "kNelson"
    | "kOtherNumeric"
    | "kPhonetic"
    | "kPrimaryNumeric"
    | "kPseudoGB1"
    | "kRSAdobe_Japan1_6"
    | "kRSJapanese"
    | "kRSKanWa"
    | "kRSKangXi"
    | "kRSKorean"
```

```
    | "kRSUnicode"
    | "kSBGY"
    | "kSemanticVariant"
    | "kSimplifiedVariant"
    | "kSpecializedSemanticVariant"
    | "kTGH"
    | "kTaiwanTelegraph"
    | "kTang"
    | "kTotalStrokes"
    | "kTraditionalVariant"
    | "kVietnamese"
    | "kXHC1983"
    | "kXerox"
   },
   attribute value { text },
   empty
}
```

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module analysis

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source
    - *@source*
- att.cmc
  - *@generatedBy*
- att.linguistic
  - *@lemma*
  - *@lemmaRef*
- att.notated

- *@notation*
- att.segLike
  - *@function*
  - att.fragmentable
    - *@part*
  - att.metrical
    - *@rhyme*
- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap hi lb milestone note orig pb q reg sic unclear

figures: figure

gaiji: g

linking: anchor seg

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

```
<s n="1">
 <w ana="#NP0" type="open" lemma="Marley">Marley</w>
 <w ana="#VBD" type="verb" lemma="be">was</w>
 <w ana="#AJ0" type="complement" lemma="die">dead</w>
</s>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="seg"/>
  <elementRef key="w"/>
```

```
  <elementRef key="m"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.lPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element w
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.cmc.attributes,
   att.linguistic.attributes,
   att.notated.attributes,
   att.segLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | seg    | w    | m    | c    | pc    | model.global    | model.lPar
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [2.5. Non-TEI Metadata]

Module header

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs
    - *@facs*
  - att.global.linking
    - *@corresp*
    - *@next*
    - *@prev*
  - att.global.rendition
    - *@rendition*
  - att.global.responsibility
    - *@cert*
    - *@resp*
  - att.global.source

    * *@source*

- att.typed
  - *@type*
  - *@subtype*

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain ANY

Example This example presumes that the prefix `dc` has been bound to the namespace `http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/` and the prefix `rdf` is bound to the namespace `http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#`. Note: The *about* attribute on the `<rdf:Description>` in this example gives a URI indicating the resource to which the metadata contained therein refer. The `<rdf:Description>` in the second <xenoData> block has a blank *about*, meaning it is pointing at the *current* document, so the RDF is about the document within which it is contained, i.e. the TEI document containing the <xenoData> block. Similarly, any kind of relative URI may be used, including fragment identifiers (see SG-id). Do note, however, that if the contents of the <xenoData> block are to be extracted and used elsewhere, any relative URIs will have to be resolved accordingly.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
   xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#">
 <rdf:RDF>
  <rdf:Description rdf:about="http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/606621663">
   <dc:title>The description of a new world, called the
blazing-world</dc:title>
   <dc:creator>The Duchess of Newcastle</dc:creator>
   <dc:date>1667</dc:date>
   <dc:identifier>British Library, 8407.h.10</dc:identifier>
   <dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject>
  </rdf:Description>
 </rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
<xenoData>
 <rdf:RDF>
  <rdf:Description rdf:about="">
   <dc:title>The Description of a New World, Called the Blazing-World,
1668</dc:title>
   <dc:creator>Cavendish, Margaret (Lucas), Duchess of
Newcastle</dc:creator>
   <dc:publisher>Women Writers Project</dc:publisher>
   <dc:date>2002-02-12</dc:date>
   <dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject>
  </rdf:Description>
 </rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix `rdf` is bound to the namespace `http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#`, the prefix `dc` is bound to the namespace `http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/`, and the prefix `cc` is bound to the namespace `http://web.resource.org/cc/`.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/"
   xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
   xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#">
 <rdf:RDF>
  <cc:Work rdf:about="">
```

```
      <dc:title>Applied Software Project Management - review</dc:title>
      <dc:type rdf:resource="http://purl.org/dc/dcmitype/Text"/>
      <dc:license rdf:resource="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/uk/"/>
    </cc:Work>
    <cc:License rdf:about="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/uk/">
      <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Reproduction"/>
      <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Distribution"/>
      <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Notice"/>
      <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Attribution"/>
      <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/DerivativeWorks"/>
      <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/ShareAlike"/>
    </cc:License>
  </rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix `dc` is again bound to the namespace `http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/`, and the prefix `oai_dc` is bound to the namespace `http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/`.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
   xmlns:oai_dc="http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/">
 <oai_dc:dc>
  <dc:title>The colonial despatches of Vancouver Island and British
     Columbia 1846-1871: 11566, CO 60/2, p. 291; received 13 November.
     Trevelyan to Merivale (Permanent Under-Secretary)</dc:title>
  <dc:date>1858-11-12</dc:date>
  <dc:creator>Trevelyan</dc:creator>
  <dc:publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media
     Centre, and UVic Libraries</dc:publisher>
  <dc:type>InteractiveResource</dc:type>
  <dc:format>application/xhtml+xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <dc:identifier>http://bcgenesis.uvic.ca/getDoc.htm?id=B585TE13.scx</dc:identifier>
  <dc:rights>This document is licensed under a Creative Commons
…</dc:rights>
  <dc:language>(SCHEME=ISO639) en</dc:language>
  <dc:source>Transcribed from microfilm and/or original documents, and
     marked up in TEI P5 XML. The interactive XHTML resource is generated
     from the XHTML using XQuery and XSLT.</dc:source>
  <dc:source>repository: CO</dc:source>
  <dc:source>coNumber: 60</dc:source>
  <dc:source>coVol: 2</dc:source>
  <dc:source>page: 291</dc:source>
  <dc:source>coRegistration: 11566</dc:source>
  <dc:source>received: received 13 November</dc:source>
  <dc:subject>Trevelyan, Sir Charles Edward</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Merivale, Herman</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Elliot, T. Frederick</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Moody, Colonel Richard Clement</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Lytton, Sir Edward George Earle Bulwer</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Jadis, Vane</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Carnarvon, Earl</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>British Columbia</dc:subject>
  <dc:description>British Columbia correspondence: Public Offices
     document (normally correspondence between government
     departments)</dc:description>
 </oai_dc:dc>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix `mods` is bound to the namespace `http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3`.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:mods="http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3">
 <mods:mods>
  <mods:titleInfo>
   <mods:title>Academic adaptation and cross-cultural
        learning experiences of Chinese students at American
        universities</mods:title>
   <mods:subTitle>a narrative inquiry</mods:subTitle>
  </mods:titleInfo>
  <mods:name type="personal"
   authority="local">
   <mods:namePart/>
   <mods:role>
    <mods:roleTerm authority="marcrelator"
     type="text">Author</mods:roleTerm>
   </mods:role>
   <mods:affiliation>Northeastern University</mods:affiliation>
   <mods:namePart type="given">Hong</mods:namePart>
   <mods:namePart type="family">Zhang</mods:namePart>
  </mods:name>
  <mods:name type="personal"
   authority="local">
   <mods:namePart/>
   <mods:role>
    <mods:roleTerm authority="local"
     type="text">Advisor</mods:roleTerm>
   </mods:role>
   <mods:namePart type="given">Liliana</mods:namePart>
   <mods:namePart type="family">Meneses</mods:namePart>
  </mods:name>

<!-- ... -->
  <mods:typeOfResource>text</mods:typeOfResource>
  <mods:genre>doctoral theses</mods:genre>
  <mods:originInfo>
   <mods:place>
    <mods:placeTerm type="text">Boston (Mass.)</mods:placeTerm>
   </mods:place>
   <mods:publisher>Northeastern University</mods:publisher>
   <mods:copyrightDate encoding="w3cdtf"
    keyDate="yes">2013</mods:copyrightDate>
  </mods:originInfo>
  <mods:language>
   <mods:languageTerm authority="iso639-2b"
    type="code">eng</mods:languageTerm>
  </mods:language>
  <mods:physicalDescription>
   <mods:form authority="marcform">electronic</mods:form>
   <mods:digitalOrigin>born digital</mods:digitalOrigin>
  </mods:physicalDescription>
<!-- ... -->
 </mods:mods>
</xenoData>
```

Example This example shows GeoJSON embedded in <xenoData>. Note that JSON does not permit newlines inside string values. These must be escaped as `\n`. To avoid the accidental insertion of newlines by software, the use of *xml:space* is recommended. Blocks of JSON should be wrapped in CDATA sections, as they may contain characters illegal in XML.

```
<xenoData xml:space="preserve">
<![CDATA[
{
    "features": [
        {
            "geometry": {
                "type": "Point",
                "coordinates": [
                    68.388483,
                    33.498616
                ]
            },
            "type": "Feature",
            "id": "darmc-location-19727",
            "properties": {
                "snippet": "Unknown; 330 BC - AD 300",
                "link": "https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/59694/darmc-location-19727",
                "description": "5M scale point location",
                "location_precision": "precise",
                "title": "DARMC location 19727"
            }
        }
    ],
    "id": "59694",
    "subject": [
        "dare:ancient=1",
        "dare:feature=settlement",
        "dare:major=0"
    ],
    "title": "Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
    "provenance": "Barrington Atlas: BAtlas 6 B3 Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
    "placeTypeURIs": [
        "https://pleiades.stoa.org/vocabularies/place-types/settlement"
    ],
    "details": "<p>The Barrington Atlas Directory notes: Kalat-e-Ghilzai? AFG</p>",
    "@context": {
        "snippet": "dcterms:abstract",
        "rights": "dcterms:rights",
        "description": "dcterms:description",
        "title": "dcterms:title",
        "dcterms": "http://purl.org/dc/terms/",
        "subject": "dcterms:subject",
        "uri": "@id",
        "created": "dcterms:created"
    },
    "review_state": "published",
    "type": "FeatureCollection",
    "description": "An ancient place, cited: BAtlas 6 B3 Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
    "reprPoint": [
        68.388483,
        33.498616
    ],
    "placeTypes": [
        "settlement"
    ],
    "bbox": [
        68.388483,
        33.498616,
        68.388483,
        33.498616
    ],
```

```
        "rights": "Copyright © The Contributors. Sharing and remixing permitted under CC-BY.",
        "created": "2010-09-23T04:31:55Z",
        "uri": "https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/59694",
        "creators": [
            {
                "username": null,
                "name": "M.U. Erdosy"
            }
        ],
        "@type": "Place"
    }
    ]]>
    </xenoData>
```

Note: the example above has been trimmed for legibility. The original may be found linked from Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria. The contributors, listed per the license terms, are R. Talbert, Jeffrey Becker, W. Röllig, Tom Elliott, H. Kopp, DARMC, Sean Gillies, B. Siewert-Mayer, Francis Deblauwe, and Eric Kansa.

Schematron <sch:pattern is-a="declarable"> <sch:param name="tde" value="tei:xenoData"/> </sch:pattern>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <textNode/>
  <anyElement minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element xenoData
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | anyElement_xenoData_1+ )
}
```

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [12.1. Digital Facsimiles 12.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes
- att.global
  - *@xml:id*
  - *@n*
  - *@xml:lang*
  - *@xml:base*
  - *@xml:space*
  - att.global.analytic
    - *@ana*
  - att.global.facs

        * *@facs*
    - att.global.linking
        * *@corresp*
        * *@next*
        * *@prev*
    - att.global.rendition
        * *@rendition*
    - att.global.responsibility
        * *@cert*
        * *@resp*
    - att.global.source
        * *@source*
- att.coordinated
    - *@start*
    - *@ulx*
    - *@uly*
    - *@lrx*
    - *@lry*
    - *@points*
- att.typed
    - *@type*
    - *@subtype*
- att.written
    - *@hand*

`@rotate` indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the `<msDesc>` element or by the coordinates of the <surface> itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric
Default 0

Member of model.linePart
Contained by
transcr: surface zone
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: add cb choice del gap graphic hi lb milestone note pb q unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
linking: anchor seg
transcr: fw surface zone
character data

Note The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface.

A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.

A zone may be of any shape. The attribute *points* may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.

A zone is always a closed polygon. Repeating the initial coordinate at the end of the sequence is optional. To encode an unclosed path, use the `<path>` element.

Example

```
<surface ulx="14.54" uly="16.14" lrx="0"
 lry="0">
 <graphic url="stone.jpg"/>
 <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875
10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/>
</surface>
```

This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section PH-surfzone.

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="50" uly="20" lrx="400"
  lry="280">
  <zone ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="500" lry="321">
   <graphic url="graphic.png"/>
  </zone>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="surface"/>
  <classRef key="model.linePart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element zone
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.coordinated.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute rotate { text }?,
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.graphicLike    | model.global    | surface    | model.linePa
}
```

17.2 Model classes

---

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs] addrLine

---

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members address email

---

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]

Module tei

Used by cit macro.phraseSeq model.inter sp

Members model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText

---

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module tei

Used by availability

Members licence

---

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module tei

Used by cit listBibl model.inter model.personPart place relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy

Members bibl biblFull listBibl

---

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.imprintPart[biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author editor respStmt] availability bibl edition extent quote relatedItem

---

model.castItemPart groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name.

Module tei

Used by castItem

Members actor role roleDesc

---

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei

Used by choice

Members abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic supplied unclear

---

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by argument body castList div epigraph figure postscript set

Members model.cmc model.divPart[model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] lg sp] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl biblFull listBibl] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listPerson listPlace table] model.stageLike[stage] castList] q

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

---

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members date time

---

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei

Used by category char glyph graphic taxonomy

Members desc

---

model.describedResource groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or root element of a TEI-conformant document. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by teiCorpus

Members TEI teiCorpus

---

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module tei

Used by body div figure front group lg list table

Members model.divBottomPart[closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

---

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei

Used by back model.divBottom postscript

Members closer postscript signed trailer

---

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front

Members div

---

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by macro.specialPara model.common

Members model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module tei

Used by body castList div group lg list

Members model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head] opener signed] model.divWrapper[argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

---

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei

Used by model.divTop postscript

Members model.headLike[head] opener signed

---

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module tei

Used by model.divBottom model.divTop

Members argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

---

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members code foreign term title

---

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by encodingDesc

Members charDecl classDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl

---

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members model.frontPart.drama[castList set] listBibl titlePage

---

model.frontPart.drama groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]

Module tei

Used by model.frontPart

Members castList set

---

model.gLike groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module tei

Used by bibl byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head idno l macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext model.paraPart opener pc time trailer w zone

Members g

---

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by address argument back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList cit closer date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure floatingText front group head l lg list macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener person postscript set sp surface table text time titlePage trailer w zone

Members model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[anchor cb fw lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure

---

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members gap

---

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

Module tei

Used by char cit facsimile figure formula glyph model.phrase surface table zone

Members formula graphic

---

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

Used by argument castGroup figure listBibl listPerson listPlace model.divTopPart place set table

Members head

---

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module tei

Used by formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w

Members hi q

---

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members model.emphLike[code foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q]

---

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module tei

Used by model.biblPart

Members biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

---

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by head l macro.limitedContent macro.specialPara model.common model.paraPart trailer

Members model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl biblFull listBibl] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listPerson listPlace table] model.stageLike[stage] castList

---

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by head lg model.divPart model.paraPart sp trailer

Members l

---

model.lPart groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only. [6.2. Components of the Verse Line]

Module tei

Used by model.phrase w

Members rhyme

---

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by lg model.inter place surface

Members desc label

---

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.emphLike[code foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[measure num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan subst] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref]

---

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a `<sourceDoc>` element.

Module tei

Used by zone

Members model.hiLike[hi q] add c choice del pc seg unclear w zone

---

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]

Module tei

Used by abstract back model.inter sourceDesc sp

Members list listPerson listPlace table

---

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.data

Members measure num

---

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module tei

Used by listBibl model.global subst

Members anchor cb fw lb milestone pb

---

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by model.addrPart model.pPart.data

Members model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike respStmt

Members name

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]

Module tei

Used by char glyph model.global notesStmt place

Members note

---

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by abstract availability back editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc front langUsage model.divPart particDesc person place prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt settingDesc sourceDesc sp

Members ab p

---

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart

---

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[measure num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs]

---

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase pc w

Members model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear]

---

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

Members abbr choice expan subst

---

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei

Used by lg model.pPart.edit

Members add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear

---

model.paraPart groups elements that may appear in paragraphs and similar elements. [3.1. Paragraphs]

Module tei

Used by macro.abContent macro.paraContent

Members model.gLike[g] model.global[model.global.edit[gap] model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[anchor cb fw lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note] figure] model.inter[model.attributable[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText] model.biblLike[bibl biblFull listBibl] model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listPerson listPlace table] model.stageLike[stage] castList] model.lLike[l] model.phrase[model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[code foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q]] model.lPart[rhyme] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[measure num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear]] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike[c pc s seg w]] lg

---

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPerson particDesc

Members person

---

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [16.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module tei

Used by person

Members model.biblLike[bibl biblFull listBibl] model.eventLike model.persStateLike idno name

---

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head l macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara model.paraPart opener time trailer

Members model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[code foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi q]] model.lPart[rhyme] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[measure num] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear]] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike[c pc s seg w]

Note This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

---

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPlace place settingDesc

Members place

---

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members abstract creation langUsage particDesc settingDesc textClass

---

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module tei

Used by bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail person place relatedItem

Members ref

---

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members distributor publisher

Note The agency child elements, while not required, are required if one of the detail child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a detail child element without a preceding agency child element.

See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

---

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members model.ptrLike[ref] address availability date idno pubPlace

Note A detail child element may not occur unless an agency child element precedes it. See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

---

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module tei

Used by model.attributable

Members cit quote

---

model.resource groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by TEI teiCorpus

Members facsimile text

---

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module tei

Used by editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt

Members author editor respStmt

---

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members c pc s seg w

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

Module tei

Used by lg model.inter sp

Members stage

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

Module tei

Used by teiHeader

Members encodingDesc profileDesc xenoData

---

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei

Used by titlePage

Members argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic imprimatur titlePart

17.3 Attribute classes

---

att.anchoring (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

Module tei

Members note

Attributes

@anchored (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. page 218, lines 3–4). The *anchored* attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

@targetEnd (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 17.2.4.6. range().

Example

```
<p>(...) tamen reuerendos dominos archiepiscopum et canonicos Leopolienses
necnon episcopum in duplicibus Quatuortemporibus<anchor xml:id="A55234"/>
totaliter expediui...</p>
<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<noteGrp targetEnd="#A55234">
 <note xml:lang="en"> Quatuor Tempora, so called dry fast days.
 </note>
 <note xml:lang="pl"> Quatuor Tempora, tzw. Suche dni postne.
 </note>
</noteGrp>
```

---

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module tei

Members att.ascribed.directed[q sp stage] change

Attributes

`@who` indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <role> elements in the <castList> using the *who* attribute.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
 <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#Barnardo">
 <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
 <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
 <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
 <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

---

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts]

Module tei

Members q sp stage

Attributes

- att.ascribed
  - *@who*

@toWhom indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *toWhom* attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes *toWhom* to indicate the directionality of the action.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil"
 toWhom="#lov">
 <speaker>Emil.</speaker>
 <l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov"
 toWhom="#emil">
 <speaker>Lov.</speaker>
 <l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
 <stage who="emil"
  toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
 <l>But that poor helpless wretch——</l>
</sp>
```

Note To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a *toWhom* attribute.

---

att.breaking

provides attributes to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb

Attributes

@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe the encoding does not take any position on this issue.

In the following lines from the 'Dream of the Rood', the words *lāðost* and *reord-berendum* each start on one line and continue onto the next. `<ab> ...eþesa tome iu icþæs ȝeþorden þita heardoſt .`
`leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes`
`þeȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<lb break="no"/>`
`rendum hþæt me þaȝeþeorðode þuldres ealdor ofer...`
`</ab>`

---

att.cReferencing provides attributes that may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

Module tei

Members ref term

Attributes

`@cRef` (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Note The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 17.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.

The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given `<ptr>` element.

---

att.calendarSystem provides attributes for indicating calendar systems to which a date belongs. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

Module tei

Members date docDate time

Attributes

`@calendar` indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">
<sch:assert test="string-length(normalize-space(.)) gt 0">
@calendar indicates one or more systems or calendars to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

```
He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22,
1732</date> (<date calendar="#julian"
 when="1732-02-22">Feb. 11, 1731/32,
O.S.</date>).

He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian #julian"
 when="1732-02-22">Feb. 22, 1732
```

```
(Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.)</date>.
```

Note Note that the *calendar* attribute declares the calendar system used to interpret the textual content of an element, as it appears on an original source. It does *not* modify the interpretation of the normalization attributes provided by att.datable.w3c, att.datable.iso, or att.datable.custom. Attributes from those first two classes are always interpreted as Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian dates, as per the respective standards on which they are based. The calender system used to interpret the last (att.datable.custom) may be specified with *datingMethod*.

---

att.canonical provides attributes that can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

Module tei

Members att.naming[att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs] actor bibl biblFull catDesc date distributor docAuthor docTitle publisher resp respStmt term time title

Attributes

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
 type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

Example In this contrived example, a canonical reference to the same organisation is provided in four different ways.

```
<author n="1">
 <name ref="http://nzetc.victoria.ac.nz/tm/scholarly/name-427308.html"
  type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>

<author n="2">
 <name ref="nzvn:427308"
  type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>

<author n="3">
 <name ref="./named_entities.xml#o427308"
  type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>


<author n="4">
 <name key="name-427308"
  type="organisation">New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council</name>
</author>
```

The first presumes the availability of an internet connection and a processor that can resolve a URI (most can). The second requires, in addition, a <prefixDef> that

declares how the `nzvm` prefix should be interpreted. The third does not require an internet connection, but does require that a file named named_entities.xml be in the same directory as the TEI document. The fourth requires that an entire external system for key resolution be available.

Note The *key* attribute is more flexible and general-purpose, but its use in interchange requires that documentation about how the key is to be resolved be sent to the recipient of the TEI document. In contrast values of the *ref* attribute are resolved using the widely accepted protocols for a URI, and thus less documentation, if any, is likely required by the recipient in data interchange.

These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both *key* and *ref* are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customization, for interchange.

---

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei

Members biblScope

Attributes

`@unit` identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **volume** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

page (page) the element contains a page number or page range.

line the element contains a line number or line range.

chapter (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

column the element identifies a column.

entry the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries.

`@from` specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

`@to` specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

---

att.cmc (computer-mediated communication) provides attributes categorizing how the element content was created in a CMC environment.

Module tei

Members ab abbr add address anchor argument bibl biblFull byline c cb choice cit closer corr date dateline del desc docAuthor docDate email epigraph expan figure floatingText foreign formula gap graphic head hi idno l label lb lg list listBibl listPerson listPlace measure milestone name note num opener orig p pb pc postscript q quote ref reg rs s salute seg sic signed stage table term time title trailer unclear w

Attributes

@generatedBy (generated by) categorizes how the content of an element was generated in a CMC environment.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@generatedBy]">
<sch:assert test="ancestor-or-self::tei:post">The @generatedBy attribute is for use within a <post> element.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Suggested values include: **human** the content was naturally typed or spoken by a human user

template the content was generated after a human user activated a template for its insertion

system the content was generated by the system, i.e. the CMC environment

bot the content was generated by a bot, i.e. a non-human agent, typically one that is not part of the CMC environment itself

unspecified the content was generated by an unknown or unspecified process

```
automatic system message in chat: user moves on to another
chatroom <post type="event"
 generatedBy="system"
 who="#system"
 rend="color:blue">
 <p>
  <name type="nickname"
   corresp="#A02">McMike</name> geht
   in einen anderen Raum:
<name type="roomname">Kreuzfahrt</name>
 </p>
</post>
automatic system message in chat: user enters a chatroom
<post type="event"
 generatedBy="system">
 <p>
  <name type="nickname"
   corresp="#A08">c_bo</name> betritt
   den Raum. </p>
</post>
automatic system message in chat: user changes his font
color <post type="event"
 generatedBy="system"
 rend="color:red">
 <p>
  <name type="nickname"
   corresp="#A08">c_bo</name> hat die
   Farbe gewechselt.
 </p>
</post>
An automatic signature of user including an automatic
timestamp (Wikipedia discussion, anonymized). The
```

```
specification of generatedBy at the inner element <signed>
is meant to override the specification at the outer element
<post>. This is generally possible when the outer
generatedBy value is "human". <post type="standard"
 generatedBy="human"
 indentLevel="2"
 synch="#t00394407"
 who="#WU00005582">
 <p> Kurze Nachfrage: Die Hieros für den Goldnamen stammen
   auch von Beckerath gem. Literatur ? Grüße --</p>
 <signed generatedBy="template"
  rend="inline">
  <gap reason="signatureContent"/>
  <time generatedBy="template">18:50, 22. Okt. 2008
(CEST)</time>
 </signed>
</post>
Wikipedia talk page: user signature <post type="written"
 generatedBy="human">
<!-- ... main content of posting ... -->
 <signed generatedBy="template">
  <gap reason="signatureContent"/>
  <time generatedBy="template">12:01, 12. Jun. 2009
(CEST)</time>
 </signed>
</post>
```

---

att.coordinated provides attributes that can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module transcr

Members surface zone

Attributes

@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

@ulx gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@uly gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@lrx gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@lry gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.numeric

@points identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.
Status Optional

Datatype 3–∞ occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace

---

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

Module tei

Members att.gaijiProp[localProp unicodeProp unihanProp] author change creation date docDate editor idno licence mapping name resp time title

Attributes

- att.datable.w3c
  - *@when*
  - *@notBefore*
  - *@notAfter*
  - *@from*
  - *@to*

`@period` supplies pointers to one or more definitions of named periods of time (typically <category>s, <date>s, or `<event>`s) within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.datable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.datable.iso` and `att.datable.custom` classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 14.4. Dates]

Module tei

Members att.datable[att.gaijiProp[localProp unicodeProp unihanProp] author change creation date docDate editor idno licence mapping name resp time title]

Attributes

`@when` supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. `<p>`

```
 <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
 <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at
3:25 in the morning</date>
 <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
pm</time>
 <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
 <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
 <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
```

```
 <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
 <date when="--08">August</date>
 <date when="2006">MMVI</date>
 <date when="0056">AD 56</date>
 <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
This list begins in
the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the
Sunday after
Pentecost, in that year the
<date calendar="#julian"
 when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
<opener>
 <dateline>
  <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
  <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
 </dateline>
 <salute>To
   Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday
<time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Example

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

Note The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

---

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members add date del gap subst supplied time unclear

Attributes

`@unit` names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **chars** characters

lines lines

pages pages

words words

cm centimetres

mm millimetre

in inches

`@quantity` specifies the length in the units specified

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

`@extent` indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<gap extent="5 words"/>
<height extent="half the page"/>
```

`@scope` where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.

most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module tei

Members div lg

Attributes

- att.fragmentable
  - *@part*
- att.metrical

– *@rhyme*

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.

medial division lacks material at start and end.

final division lacks material at start.

unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.

complete division is not a sample.[Default]

---

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull change revisionDesc

Attributes

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **approved**

candidate

cleared

deprecated

draft [Default]

embargoed

expired

frozen

galley

proposed

published

recommendation

submitted

unfinished

withdrawn

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change when="2010-10-21"
  status="published"/>
 <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
 <change when="2010-08-02"
  status="embargoed"/>
 <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"
  who="#MSM"/>
 <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"
  who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

---

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.1. Origination 14.3.2. The Person Element 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add del subst] corr date expan gap name person place reg supplied time unclear

Attributes

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a `<witness>`, `<msDesc>`, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

---

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb

Attributes

`@ed` (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line beginning) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

`@edRef` (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line beginning) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
```

```
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example

```
<listBibl>
 <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
 <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,
<date>1937</date>
 </bibl>
 <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
 <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
 </bibl>
</listBibl>
<!-- ... -->
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of
their ancient culture,
still living their personal lives in zest and endless
novelty of action, … I saw myself still
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con<pb n="291" break="no"
  edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>
```

In the above example, the soft hyphen in Stapledon 1937 is omitted. Such decisions may be documented in the edition's declaration of editorial principles, e.g. with the `<hyphenation>` element in the <teiHeader>.

Note These guidelines provide no semantic basis or suggested precedence when both *ed* and *edRef* are provided. For this reason simultaneous use of both is not recommended unless documentation explaining the use is provided, probably in an ODD customization, for interchange.

---

att.fragmentable provides attributes for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei

Members att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[c pc s seg w] ab l p

Attributes

`@part` specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

N (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]

I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

---

att.gaijiProp provides attributes for defining the properties of non-standard characters or glyphs. [5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes]

Module gaiji

Members localProp unicodeProp unihanProp

Attributes
- att.datable
  - *@period*
  - att.datable.w3c
    - *@when*
    - *@notBefore*
    - *@notAfter*
    - *@from*
    - *@to*

@name provides the name of the character or glyph property being defined.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.xmlName

@value provides the value of the character or glyph property being defined.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.text

@version specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **1.0.1**

1.1
2.0
2.1
3.0
3.1
3.2
4.0
4.1
5.0
5.1
5.2
6.0
6.1
6.2
6.3
7.0
8.0

9.0
10.0
11.0
12.0
12.1
13.0
14.0
15.0
unassigned

`@scheme` supplies the name of the character set system from which this property is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **Unicode** (Unicode) ISO 10646[Default]

Bridwell (E. Nelson Bridwell) Original character set developed by E. Nelson Bridwell as described by Al Turniansky, in use from the 1950s to 1985.

Brewer (Georg Brewer) Developed by Georg Brewer, with a look similar to the Byrne glyphs. Like the Byrne set, this is not a true character set, but rather a set of alternate glyphs.

Doyle (Darren Doyle) Glyph set (in some cases associated with multiple characters) developed by Darren Doyle as part of a comprehensive version of the language created in part for an invented language classs at UT Austin in 2006.

Schreyer (Christine Schreyer) Character set (without actual codepoints) of 153 characters developed, along with pronunciation rules, roughly 300 words, and a grammar, developed by Christine Schreyer developed in 2012 for Warner Brothers.

Example In this example a definition for the Unicode property Decomposition Mapping is provided.

```
<unicodeProp name="Decomposition_Mapping"
 value="circle"/>
```

Note All name-only attributes need an xs:boolean attribute value inside *value*.

---

att.global

provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]

Module tei

Members TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson

listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone

Attributes

- att.global.analytic
  - *@ana*
- att.global.facs
  - *@facs*
- att.global.linking
  - *@corresp*
  - *@next*
  - *@prev*
- att.global.rendition
  - *@rendition*
- att.global.responsibility
  - *@cert*
  - *@resp*
- att.global.source
  - *@source*

`@xml:id` (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype ID

Note The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

`@n` (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

`@xml:lang` (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

```
<p> … The consequences of
this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
ancestral territorial organization.</p>
```

Note The *xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

Only attributes with free text values (rare in these guidelines) will be in the scope of *xml:lang*.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see https://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
 <head>Selections from <title level="m">The Collected
Letters of Robert Southey. Part 1: 1791-1797</title>
 </head>
 <listBibl xml:base="https://romantic-circles.org/sites/default/files/imported/editi
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.3.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Grosvenor Charles
Bedford</title>, <date when="1792-04-03">3 April
1792</date>.
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.57.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Anna Seward</title>,
<date when="1793-09-18">18 September 1793</date>.
   </ref>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
   <ref target="letterEEd.26.85.xml">
    <title>Robert Southey to Robert Lovell</title>,
<date from="1794-04-05"
     to="1794-04-06">5-6 April, 1794</date>.
   </ref>
  </bibl>
 </listBibl>
</div>
```

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable

preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

---

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [18.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses 18.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module analysis

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone]

Attributes

`@ana` (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

---

att.global.facs provides attributes used to express correspondence between an element and all or part of a facsimile image or surface. [12.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transcr

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl

email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone]

Attributes

`@facs` (facsimile) points to one or more images, portions of an image, or surfaces which correspond to the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

---

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [17. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module linking

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone]

Attributes

`@corresp` (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<group>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki,
i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
```

```
 </text>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and
Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
    <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</group>In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each
containing the same document in a different language. The
correspondence is indicated using corresp. The language is
indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the
tag with the corresp and the tag pointed to by the corresp
inherit the value from their immediate parent.

<!-- In a placeography called "places.xml"
--><place xml:id="LOND1"
 corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1">
 <placeName>London</placeName>
 <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1">
 <persName type="lit">London</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Allegorical character representing the city of
<placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">London</placeName>.</p>
 </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
 corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
 <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
     allegorical character in mayoral shows.
  </p>
 </note>
</person>In this example, a <place> element containing
information about the city of London is linked with two
<person> elements in a literary personography. This
correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship
than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in
which an allegorical character could be substituted for the
physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a
correspondence between them.
```

`@next` (next) points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

`@prev` (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

---

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone]

Attributes

`@rendition` points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **simple:allcaps** all capitals

simple:blackletter black letter or gothic typeface

simple:bold bold typeface

simple:bottombraced marked with a brace under the bottom of the text

simple:boxed border around the text

simple:centre centred

simple:cursive cursive typeface

simple:display block display

simple:doublestrikethrough strikethrough with double line

simple:doubleunderline underlined with double line

simple:dropcap initial letter larger or decorated

simple:float floated out of main flow

simple:hyphen with a hyphen here (eg in line break)

simple:inline inline rendering

simple:justify justified text

simple:italic italic typeface

simple:larger larger type

simple:left aligned to the left or left-justified

simple:leftbraced marked with a brace on the left side of the text

simple:letterspace larger-than-normal spacing between letters, usually for emphasis

simple:literal fixed-width typeface, spacing preserved

simple:normalstyle upright shape and default weight of typeface

simple:normalweight normal typeface weight

simple:right aligned to the right or right-justified

simple:rightbraced marked with a brace to the right of the text

simple:rotateleft rotated to the left

simple:rotateright rotated to the right

simple:smallcaps small caps

simple:smaller smaller type

simple:strikethrough strike through

simple:subscript subscript

simple:superscript superscript

simple:topbraced marked with a brace above the text

simple:typewriter fixed-width typeface, like typewriter

simple:underline underlined with single line

simple:wavyunderline underlined with wavy line

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
<lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
<!-- elsewhere... -->
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

Note The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If *rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *rend*. Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@rendition]"> <sch:let name="results" value="for $val in tokenize(normalize-space(@rendition),'\s+') return starts-with($val,'simple:') or (starts-with($val,'#') and //tei:rendition[@xml:id=substring($val,2)])"/> <sch:assert test="every $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Each of the rendition values in "<sch:value-of select="@rendition"/>" must point to a local ID or to a token in the Simple scheme (<sch:value-of select="$results"/>)</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@corresp]"> <sch:let name="results" value="for

$t in tokenize(normalize-space(@corresp),'\s+') return starts-with($t,'#') and not(id(substring($t,2)))"/> <sch:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<sch:value-of select="@corresp"/>" must point to an ID in this document (<sch:value-of select="$results"/>)</sch:report> </sch:rule>

---

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes 12.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 18.3. Spans and Interpretations 14.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone]

Attributes

`@cert` (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.probCert

`@resp` (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or `<org>`) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example

```
Blessed are the
<choice>
 <sic>cheesemakers</sic>
```

```
 <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
```

Example

```
<!-- in the <text> ... --><lg>
<!-- ... -->
 <l>Punkes, Panders, baſe extortionizing
   sla<choice>
   <sic>n</sic>
   <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>
  </choice>es,</l>
<!-- ... -->
</lg>
<!-- in the <teiHeader> ... -->
<!-- ... -->
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
 <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
 <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>
```

---

att.global.source provides attributes used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef localProp mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear unicodeProp unihanProp w xenoData zone]

Attributes

`@source` specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:let name="srcs" value="tokenize(normalize-space(@source),' ')"/> <sch:report test="(self::tei:classRef | self::tei:dataRef | self::tei:elementRef | self::tei:macroRef | self::tei:moduleRef | self::tei:schemaSpec) and $srcs[2]"> When used on a schema description element (like <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/>), the @source attribute should

have only 1 value. (This one has <sch:value-of select="count($srcs)"/>.) </sch:report> </sch:rule>

Note The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on an element describing a schema component (`<classRef>`, `<dataRef>`, `<elementRef>`, `<macroRef>`, `<moduleRef>`, or `<schemaSpec>`), it identifies the source from which declarations for the components should be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, a private scheme URI of the form `tei:x.y.z`, where `x.y.z` indicates the version number, e.g. `tei:4.3.2` for TEI P5 release 4.3.2 or (as a special case) `tei:current` for whatever is the latest release, or a private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.

When used on elements describing schema components, *source* should have only one value; when used on other elements multiple values are permitted.

Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a problematic and
should be a contested
   term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
 <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the
more we learn, the
   less we seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
 <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
<publisher>University of
   Chicago Press</publisher> (<date>2003</date>),
<biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.

</bibl>
```

Example

```
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

Example

```
<schemaSpec ident="myODD"
 source="mycompiledODD.xml">
<!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->
</schemaSpec>
```

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

---

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module tei

Members att.media[graphic] ref

Attributes

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Example In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
 target="https://raw.githubusercontent.com/TEIC/TEI/dev/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>
```

Note This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

---

att.linguistic provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically <w> and <pc> in the analysis module. [18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module analysis

Members pc w

Attributes

@lemma provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.text

```
<w lemma="wife">wives</w>
<w lemma="Arznei">Artzeneyen</w>
```

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

```
<w type="verb"
 lemma="hit"
 lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section 18.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation for discussion.

---

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

Module tei

Members measure

Attributes

`@unit` (unit) indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

s (second) SI base unit of time

Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency

Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

L (litre) 1 dm^3

t (tonne) 10^3 kg

ha (hectare) 1 hm^2

Å (ångström) 10^{1} m

mL (millilitre)

cm (centimetre)

dB (decibel) see remarks, below

kbit (kilobit) 10^3 or 1000 bits

Kibit (kibibit) 2^1 or 1024 bits

kB (kilobyte) 10^3 or 1000 bytes

KiB (kibibyte) 2^1 or 1024 bytes

MB (megabyte) 10 or 1 000 000 bytes

MiB (mebibyte) 2^2 or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the *unit* attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further `http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/`; `http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/`). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

`@unitRef` points to a unique identifier stored in the *xml:id* of a `<unitDef>` element that defines a unit of measure.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

@quantity (quantity) specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@commodity (commodity) indicates the substance that is being measured

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Note In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@unitRef]"> <sch:report test="@unit" role="info">The @unit attribute may be unnecessary when @unitRef is present.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Note This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<l>So weren't you gonna buy <measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal"
  commodity="ice cream">half
   a gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<l>So won't you go and buy <measure quantity="1.893" unit="L"
  commodity="ice cream">half
   a gallon</measure>, baby?</l>
```

The unit should normally be named using the standard symbol for an SI unit (see further http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/; http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

---

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module tei

Members graphic

Attributes
- att.internetMedia
  - *@mimeType*

@width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement

@height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement

@scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

---

att.metrical defines a set of attributes that certain elements may use to represent metrical information. [6.4. Rhyme and Metrical Analysis]

Module verse

Members att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[c pc s seg w] l

Attributes

`@rhyme` (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.

Status Recommended

Datatype token

Note By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for *met* by use of the `<metDecl>` element in the TEI header.

When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.

---

att.milestoneUnit provides attributes to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module core

Members milestone

Attributes

`@unit` provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **page** physical page beginnings (synonymous with the <pb> element).

column column beginnings.

line line beginnings (synonymous with the <lb> element).

book any units termed book, liber, etc.

poem individual poems in a collection.

canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

act acts within a play.

scene scenes within a play or act.

section sections of any kind.

absent passages not present in the reference edition.

unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```
<milestone n="23"
 ed="La"
```

```
 unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24"
 ed="AV"
 unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.

In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.

---

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.6.1. Referring Strings 14.3.7. Names and Nyms]

Module tei

Members att.personal[name] author editor pubPlace rs

Attributes

- att.canonical
  - *@ref*

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

---

att.notated provides attributes to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

Module tei

Members c formula quote s seg w

Attributes

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

---

att.patternReplacement provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [17.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]

Module header

Members prefixDef

Attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.pattern

Note The syntax used should follow that defined by W3C XPath syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the *replacementPattern* attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a replacement pattern, that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the *matchPattern* which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.replacement

Note The strings *$1*, *$2* etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by *matchPattern* (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression.

If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as %24.

---

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [14.2.1. Personal Names]

Module tei

Members name

Attributes

- att.naming
  - *@role*
  - *@nymRef*
  - att.canonical
    - *@ref*

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

---

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add del subst] div figure fw head label note postscript sp speaker stage trailer

Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed.

Status Recommended

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Legal values are: **above** above the line

below below the line

top at the top of the page

top-right at the top right of the page

top-left at the top left of the page

top-centre at the top center of the page

bottom-right at the bottom right of the page

bottom-left at the bottom left of the page

bottom-centre at the bottom centre of the page

bottom at the foot of the page

tablebottom underneath a table

margin-right in the right-hand margin

margin in the outer margin

margin-inner in the inner margin

margin-left in the left-hand margin

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page.

overleaf on the other side of the leaf.

overstrike superimposed on top of the current context

end at the end of the volume.

divend at the end the current division.

parend at the end the current paragraph.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

block formatted as an indented paragraph

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the
margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

---

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module tei

Members catRef licence note ref term

Attributes

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

Schematron

<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines
pointers at parallel fragments of the Universal Declaration
of Human Rights: one of them is in Polish, the other in
Swahili.
```

Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@target]">

<sch:let name="results" value="for $t in tokenize(normalize-space(@target),'\s+') return starts-with($t,'#') and not(id(substring($t,2)))"/> <sch:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<sch:value-of select="@target"/>" must point to an ID in this document (<sch:value-of select="$results"/>)</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Note One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace

character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

`@evaluate` (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

---

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module tei

Members graphic

Attributes

`@url` (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.pointer

---

att.scope provides attributes to describe, in general terms, the scope of an element's application.

Module tei

Members language

Attributes

`@scope` indicates the scope of application of the element

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **sole** only this particular feature is used throughout the document

major this feature is used through most of the document

minor this feature is used occasionally through the document

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="en"
  scope="major"/>
 <language ident="es"
```

```
  scope="minor"/>
 <language ident="x-ww"
  scope="minor">An invented language the children call
<name>Wikwah</name>.</language>
</langUsage>
<handNote scope="sole">
 <p>Written in insular phase II half-uncial with
   interlinear Old English gloss in an Anglo-Saxon
   pointed minuscule.</p>
</handNote>
```

---

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 18.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module tei

Members c pc s seg w

Attributes

- att.fragmentable
  - *@part*
- att.metrical
  - *@rhyme*

`@function` (function) characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a `<cl>`, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a `<phr>`, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

---

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [10.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure]

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull idno item list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace person place term

Attributes

`@sortKey` supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah
ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">
 <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.
Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was
David's own first
cousin.
```

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters

which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under fourh, and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under maccoy, while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

---

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb

Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Schematron The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element; however, this can only be tested if both this element and the one pointed to are in the same document. <sch:rule context="tei:*[starts-with(@spanTo, '#')]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo, 2)) » ."> The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current <sch:name/> element </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

---

att.styleDef provides attributes to specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

Module tei

Members rendition

Attributes

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

free Informal free text description

other A user-defined rendition description language

Note If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use.

@schemeVersion supplies a version number for the style language provided in *scheme*.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.versionNumber

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@schemeVersion]"> <sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')"> @schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Note If *schemeVersion* is used, then *scheme* should also appear, with a value other than free.

---

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5. Temporal Information]

Module tei

Members gap

Attributes

@start indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

@end indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

---

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [12.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module tei

Members add del subst

Attributes

- att.editLike
- att.placement
  - *@place*
- att.written
  - *@hand*

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case

of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

`@cause` documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

`@seq` (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

---

att.typed provides attributes that can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes 18.1.1. Words and Above 3.6.1. Referring Strings 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions 3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse 7.2.5. Speech Contents 4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions 4.1.2. Numbered Divisions 4.2.1. Headings and Trailers 4.4. Virtual Divisions 14.3.2.3. Personal Relationships 12.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work 17.1.1. Pointers and Links 17.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors 13.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text 23.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists]

Module tei

Members TEI ab abbr add anchor bibl c castItem cb change cit corr date del desc div

figure floatingText fw g graphic group head idno label lb lg list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace mapping measure milestone name note num pb pc place quote ref reg relatedItem rhyme rs s seg surface table teiCorpus term text time title titlePage titlePart trailer w xenoData zone

Attributes

`@type` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

```
<div type="verse">
 <head>Night in Tarras</head>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
</div>
```

Note The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

`@subtype` (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the `<valList>` element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 24.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

---

att.written provides attributes to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add del subst] ab closer dateline div figure fw head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed sp speaker stage text trailer zone

Attributes

`@hand` points to a `<handNote>` element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

17.4 Macros

macro.abContent (anonymous block content) defines the content of anonymous block elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by ab

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
  <elementRef key="ab"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macro.abContent = ( text | model.paraPart | ab )*
```

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by desc figDesc rendition tagUsage

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by add corr del docEdition hi imprimatur orig p ref reg rhyme salute seg sic signed supplied title titlePart unclear

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.paraPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration `macro.paraContent = ( text | model.paraPart )*`

---

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module tei

Used by abbr actor addrLine author biblScope distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor email expan extent foreign fw label measure name num pubPlace publisher role roleDesc rs s speaker term

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq =
   ( text | model.gLike | model.attributable | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

---

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module tei

Used by classCode language resp

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

---

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by cell change item licence note q quote stage

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =
   (
      text
    | model.gLike    | model.phrase    | model.inter    | model.divPart    | model.global
```

---

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei

Used by c mapping

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macro.xtext = ( text | model.gLike )*
```

17.5 Datatypes

---

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei

Used by teidata.probCert

Content model

```
<content>
 <valList type="closed">
  <valItem ident="high"/>
  <valItem ident="medium"/>
  <valItem ident="low"/>
  <valItem ident="unknown"/>
 </valList>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
```

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

---

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- table/@rows
- table/@cols
- tagUsage/@occurs
- tagUsage/@withId

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger
```

Note Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

---

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either `.` or `,` as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times.*

---

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="duration"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except

for the `S` number, which may have a decimal component (using `.` as the decimal point). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the W3C specification.

---

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by teidata.gender teidata.sexElement:

- abbr/@type
- availability/@status
- castItem/@type
- cell/@role
- desc/@type
- formula/@notation
- fw/@type
- gap/@reason
- gap/@agent
- idno/@type
- list/@type
- measure/@type
- name/@type
- num/@type
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- person/@role
- person/@age
- q/@type
- rendition/@scope
- row/@role
- stage/@type
- supplied/@reason
- surface/@attachment
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- unclear/@reason
- unclear/@agent

Content model `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

---

teidata.gender defines the range of attribute values used to represent the gender of a person, persona, or character.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- actor/@gender
- person/@gender
- role/@gender

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.gender = teidata.enumerated`

Note Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

Values for this datatype should not be used to encode morphological gender (cf. `<gen>`, *msd* as defined in att.linguistic, and 10.3.1. Information on Written and Spoken Forms).

---

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

Module tei

Used by Element:

- language/@ident

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef name="language"/>
  <valList>
   <valItem ident=""/>
  </valList>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" )`

Note The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at `https://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry`. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at `https://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html`. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at `https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/`. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at `http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm`.

variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

extension An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. There are currently only two extensions in use. Extension `T` indicates that the content was transformed. For example en-t-it could be used for content in English that was translated from Italian. Extension T is described in the informational RFC 6497. Extension `U` can be used to embed a variety of locale attributes. It is described in the informational RFC 6067.

private use An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with `x-`) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with `x-`, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn Shona

zh-TW Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl Polish

es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

---

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- tagUsage/@gi

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="Name"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.name = xsd:Name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see `https://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name`): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

teidata.namespace defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- namespace/@name

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*

---

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- num/@value

- zone/@rotate

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef name="double"/>
  <dataRef name="token"
   restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>
  <dataRef name="decimal"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.numeric =
   xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, E notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

---

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.outputMeasurement =
   token
   {
      pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|ch|rem|vw|vh|vmin|vmax)"
   }
```

Example

```
<figure>
 <head>The TEI Logo</head>
 <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
   between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath,
all on a white
   background.</figDesc>
 <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
  url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

---

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="token"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.pattern = token`

Note A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)Wikipedia

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

---

teidata.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" }
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">
  <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
```

```
      <graphic url="handwriting.png"/>
     </zone>
    </surface>
   </facsimile>
```

Note A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

---

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- catRef/@scheme
- change/@target
- classCode/@scheme
- g/@ref
- keywords/@scheme
- relatedItem/@target

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef restriction="\S+" name="anyURI"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI { pattern = "\S+" }`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/` is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

---

teidata.prefix defines a range of values that may function as a URI scheme name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- prefixDef/@ident

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[a-z][a-z0-9\+\.\-]*"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.prefix = token { pattern = "[a-z][a-z0-9\+\.\-]*" }
```

Note This datatype is used to constrain a string of characters to one that can be used as a URI scheme name according to RFC 3986, section 3.1. Thus only the 26 lowercase letters a–z, the 10 digits 0–9, the plus sign, the period, and the hyphen are permitted, and the value must start with a letter.

---

teidata.probCert

defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
  <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty
```

---

teidata.probability

defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module tei

Used by teidata.probCert

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="double">
  <dataFacet name="minInclusive" value="0"/>
  <dataFacet name="maxInclusive" value="1"/>
 </dataRef>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.probability = xsd:double`

Note Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

---

teidata.replacement

defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.replacement = text`

---

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify the sex of an organism.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- actor/@sex
- person/@sex

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.sex = teidata.enumerated`

Note Values for attributes using this datatype may be defined locally by a project, or they may refer to an external standard.

---

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate>
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>
  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.temporal.w3c =
   xsd:date
 | xsd:gYear
 | xsd:gMonth
 | xsd:gDay
 | xsd:gYearMonth
 | xsd:gMonthDay
 | xsd:time
 | xsd:dateTime
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- rendition/@selector
- unicodeProp/@value

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="string"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.text = string`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- listChange/@ordered
- pc/@pre
- surface/@flipping
- tagsDecl/@partial

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="boolean"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

Note The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue.

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- teiCorpus/@version

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }
```

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (`https://unicode.org/versions/`). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

---

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.versionNumber =
   token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

---

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module tei

Used by teidata.enumeratedElement:

- code/@lang
- rhyme/@label
- unihanProp/@value

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

teidata.xmlName defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- unicodeProp/@name
- unihanProp/@name

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="NCName"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName`

Note The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.

---

teidata.xpath defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.xpath = text`

Note Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2..

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.

17.6 Summary of changes

The TEI simplePrint schema uses the TEI infrastructure and gaiji modules unchanged.

Module tei
Module gaiji

A subset of 45 elements is selected from the TEI header module. In addition, elements <particDesc> and <settingDesc> are provided from the corpus module. The class membership of <particDesc> is changed to ensure that it can only appear inside <profileDesc>. Secondly, a Schematron rule is added to the <text> element to ensure that elements <term> and <biblFull> can appear only in the header element, even though the schema permits them additionally in text.

Module header
Module corpus

Some attributes and attribute classes are removed. The range of values available for several attributes is constrained.

Class att.datcat	delete
Class att.declarable	delete
Class att.declaring	delete
Class att.ranging	delete
Class att.global.linking	change
Class att.canonical	change
Class att.editLike	change
Class att.pointing	change
Class att.global.rendition	change
Class att.placement	change
Class att.dimensions	change

The following unused model classes are removed.

Class model.certLike	delete
Class model.egLike	delete
Class model.entryPart	delete
Class model.glossLike	delete
Class model.oddDecl	delete
Class model.offsetLike	delete
Class model.pPart.msdesc	delete
Class model.placeNamePart	delete
Class model.placeStateLike	delete
Class model.specDescLike	delete

The following elements are modified by the TEI simplePrint specification, mostly by the addition of a processing model, but in other cases by additional constraints on the attributes they may have, or the values those attributes may take. Additional examples are also provided for some of them.

Element <ab>	change
Element <abbr>	change
Element <actor>	change
Element <add>	change
Element <address>	change
Element <addrLine>	change
Element <am>	change
Element <anchor>	change
Element <argument>	change
Element <author>	change
Element <back>	change
Element <bibl>	change
Element <biblFull>	change
Element <biblScope>	change
Element <body>	change
Element <byline>	change
Element <c>	change
Element <castGroup>	change
Element <castItem>	change
Element <castList>	change
Element <cb>	change
Element <cell>	change
Element <choice>	change
Element <cit>	change
Element <closer>	change
Element <code>	change
Element <corr>	change
Element <date>	change
Element <dateline>	change
Element <del>	change
Element <desc>	change
Element	change
Element <docAuthor>	change
Element <docDate>	change
Element <docEdition>	change
Element <docImprint>	change

Element <docTitle>	change
Element <editor>	change
Element <editorialDecl>	change
Element <email>	change
Element <epigraph>	change
Element <ex>	change
Element <expan>	change
Element <figDesc>	change
Element <figure>	change
Element <floatingText>	change
Element <foreign>	change
Element <formula>	change
Element <front>	change
Element <fw>	change
Element <g>	change
Element <gap>	change
Element <graphic>	change
Element <group>	change
Element <head>	change
Element <hi>	change
Element <imprimatur>	change
Element <item>	change
Element <l>	change
Element <label>	change
Element <lb>	change
Element <lg>	change
Element <list>	change
Element <listBibl>	change
Element <measure>	change
Element <milestone>	change
Element <name>	change
Element <note>	change
Element <num>	change
Element <opener>	change
Element <orig>	change
Element <p>	change
Element <particDesc>	change
Element <pb>	change
Element <pc>	change
Element <person>	change
Element <place>	change
Element <postscript>	change
Element <profileDesc>	change
Element <publisher>	change
Element <pubPlace>	change
Element <q>	change
Element <quote>	change
Element <ref>	change
Element <reg>	change
Element <relatedItem>	change
Element <rhyme>	change

Element <role>	change
Element <roleDesc>	change
Element <row>	change
Element <rs>	change
Element <s>	change
Element <salute>	change
Element <seg>	change
Element <set>	change
Element <sic>	change
Element <signed>	change
Element <sp>	change
Element <speaker>	change
Element <spGrp>	change
Element <stage>	change
Element <subst>	change
Element <supplied>	change
Element <table>	change
Element <taxonomy>	change
Element <fileDesc>	change
Element <revisionDesc>	change
Element <encodingDesc>	change
Element <teiHeader>	change
Element <TEI>	change
Element <term>	change
Element <text>	change
Element <time>	change
Element <title>	change
Element <titlePage>	change
Element <titlePart>	change
Element <trailer>	change
Element <unclear>	change
Element <w>	change